

OFFICIAL GUIDE TO South Africa 2018/19



The National Anthem

Nkosi sikelel' i Afrika
(God bless Africa)
Maluphakanyisw' uphondo lwayo,
(Raise high her glory)
Yizwa imithandazo yethu,
(Hear our prayers)
Nkosi sikelela, thina lusapho lwayo.
(God bless us, we her children)

Morena boloka setjhaba sa heso,
(God protect our nation)
O fedise dintwa le matshwenyeho,
(End all wars and tribulations)
O se boloke, O se boloke setjhaba sa heso,
(Protect us, protect our nation)
Setjhaba sa South Afrika – South Afrika.
(Our nation South Africa – South Africa)

Uit die blou van onse hemel,
(Ringing out from our blue heavens)
Uit die diepte van ons see,
(From the depth of our seas)
Oor ons ewige gebergtes,
(Over our everlasting mountains)
Waar die kranse antwoord gee.
(Where the echoing crags resound)

Sounds the call to come together,
And united we shall stand,
Let us live and strive for freedom,
In South Africa our land.

Official Guide to South Africa 2018/19

Sixteenth (16th) edition

Compiled, edited and published by:

Government Communications (GCIS)

Private Bag X745, Pretoria, 0001

Telephone: 012 473 0000

Website: www.gcis.gov.za

ISBN: 978-0-620-83196-3

Editor-in-Chief: Zanele Mngadi

Editor: Elias Tibane

Support services: Carel Mojela

Picture coordinators: Elizabeth Sibiya and Este Koorts

Images supplied by: GCIS

Design and layout: Ntomboxolo Boqwana and
Moipone Mampane

Compiled, edited and published by the GCIS.

The editorial staff has taken all reasonable care to ensure correctness of facts and statistics. However, any person requiring confirmation of any data in the *Official Guide to South Africa* or more detailed and specific information, should consult the relevant department/institution.

Unless otherwise specified, information contained in this *Official Guide to South Africa* was the latest available as at October 2019.

Visit www.gov.za for additional information.

Contents

Foreword by President Cyril Ramaphosa	iv
South Africa at a Glance	vi
History	1
People of South Africa	11
Government	17
The Presidency	31
Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development	41
Communications	53
Economy and Finance	67
Education	87
Environment, Forestry and Fisheries	99
Health	119
Human Settlements	127
International Relations	133
Justice and Correctional Services	145
Mineral Resources and Energy	159
Police and Defence	169
Provinces	193
Science and Innovation	203
Social Development	213
Sports, Arts and Culture	225
Tourism	245
Transport	263
Water and Sanitation	275



FOREWORD

It is an honour to present South Africans and the international community with the *Official Guide to South Africa 2018/19*.

This volume provides inspiring reminders of and insightful data on a year marked by renewal and the collective effort of South Africans and our partners globally to move our country further forward.

Our nation dedicated 2018 to the centenary of Struggle stalwarts former President Nelson Mandela and Mama Albertina Nontsikelelo Sisulu.

Our observance of this centenary year was born out of our recognition of these exceptional leaders' contribution in our past as well as our belief that the values they held dear will stand our society in good stead for centuries into the future.

Indeed, it was the values that Tata Mandela and Mama Sisulu had realised in their own lives and in the lives of the millions they led, that inspired our renewal in 2018.

Changes in the national leadership; firm actions to turn around years of corruption and flawed governance across

many public institutions and our pursuit of inclusive growth made 2018 a watershed in our recent history.

Events of national importance during this year included the Presidential Health Summit which encompassed all sectors of society and the Jobs Summit where social partners adopted measures to create more jobs, prevent job losses, provide more investment in black-owned enterprises and support companies in distress.

Equally significant were the South Africa Investment Conference and an inaugural Africa Investment Forum which respectively saw South African and global enterprises committing and recommitting themselves to growing our economy, and investors stepping up to reshape the fortunes of the African continent.

An economic stimulus and recovery plan containing a range of measures to ignite economic activity, restore investor confidence and create new jobs paved the way for the investment forums. The stimulus and recovery plan included measures to address challenges in education and healthcare, and improve municipal social infrastructure.

This *Official Guide to South Africa* revisits 12 months in which South Africans from all walks of life recorded extraordinary achievements within our national borders and in the international arena.

It should inspire all readers and users to contribute to South Africa's growth and renewal in ways that will ensure that the story we will tell in official guides to come will be even more inspiring and compelling.

We must be part of the change we want to see in South Africa, by uniting to build a society founded on the principles of justice, equality and prosperity for all.



His Excellency Cyril M. Ramaphosa
President of the Republic of South Africa
July 2019



OFFICIAL GUIDE TO
South Africa
2018/19

**South Africa
at a Glance**

Land surface area

1 220 813 km²

Key economic sectors

Mining, transport, energy, manufacturing, tourism and agriculture.

Population

Total	58,78 million
Male	28,78 million (48,8%)
Female	30 million (51,2%)

Official languages

English, isiZulu, isiXhosa, isiNdebele, Afrikaans, Siswati, Sepedi, Sesotho, Setswana, Tshivenda and Xitsonga.

Currency

Rand (ZAR) – 100 cents equals one rand.

Time

GMT +2 hours.

Government

Constitutional multiparty democracy, with three spheres – local, provincial and national government.

Capitals

Pretoria (administrative); Cape Town (legislative); Bloemfontein (judicial). The Constitutional Court is located in Johannesburg.

Provinces

Eastern Cape, Free State, Gauteng, KwaZulu-Natal, Limpopo, Mpumalanga, Northern Cape, North West and Western Cape.

Transportation

Excellent roads, rail and air facilities (both domestic and international). Public transport in major cities include the Gautrain between Johannesburg and Pretoria, and the Bus Rapid Transport System in major cities.

Telecommunications

World-class infrastructure. Internet access is widely available. The five mobile (cellular) networks are Vodacom, MTN, Cell C, Telkom Mobile and Virgin Mobile.

Health

Top-quality public and private healthcare is available throughout the country. Malaria precautions are necessary in some areas.

Source: Statistics South Africa's *Mid-year population estimates, 2019*.

For more information, visit www.southafrica.info and www.gov.za



OFFICIAL GUIDE TO
South Africa

2018/19

History

Modern humans have lived at the southern tip of Africa for more than 100 000 years and their ancestors for some 3,3 million years.

Some 2 000 years ago, the Khoekhoen (the Hottentots of early European terminology) were pastoralists who had settled mostly along the coast, while the San (the Bushmen) were hunter-gatherers spread across the region. At this time, Bantu-speaking agropastoralists began arriving in southern Africa, spreading from the eastern lowlands to the Highveld.

At several archaeological sites there is evidence of sophisticated political and material cultures.

European contact

The first European settlement in southern Africa was established by the Dutch East India Company in Table Bay (Cape Town) in 1652. Created to supply passing ships with fresh produce, the colony grew rapidly as Dutch farmers settled to grow crops. Shortly after the establishment of the colony, slaves were imported from East Africa, Madagascar and the East Indies.

The first British Settlers, known as the 1820 Settlers, arrived in Algoa Bay (now Nelson Mandela Bay) on board 21 ships, the first being the Chapman. They numbered about 4 500 and included artisans, tradesmen, religious leaders, merchants, teachers, bookbinders, blacksmiths, discharged sailors and soldiers, professional men and farmers.

Conflict

From the 1770s, colonists came into contact and inevitable conflict with Bantu-speaking chiefdoms some 800 km east of Cape Town. A century of intermittent warfare ensued during which the colonists gained ascendancy over the isiXhosa-speaking chiefdoms.

In 1795, the British occupied the Cape as a strategic base against the French, controlling the sea route to the East.

In the 1820s, the celebrated Zulu leader, Shaka, established sway over a vast area of south-east Africa. As splinter Zulu groups conquered and absorbed communities in their path, the region experienced a fundamental disruption. Substantial states, such as Moshoeshoe's Lesotho and other Sotho-Tswana chiefdoms were established.

This temporary disruption of life on the Highveld served to facilitate the expansion northwards of the original Dutch settlers' descendants, the Boer Voortrekkers, from the 1830s.

Occupation

In 1806, Britain reoccupied the Cape. As the colony prospered, the political rights of the various races were guaranteed, with slavery being abolished in 1838.

Throughout the 1800s, the boundaries of European influence spread eastwards. From the port of Durban, Natal settlers pushed northwards, further and further into the land of the Zulu. From the mid-1800s, the Voortrekkers coalesced in two land-locked white-ruled republics, the South African Republic (Transvaal) and the Orange Free State.

The mineral revolution

South Africa's diamond mining industry dates back to 1867, when diamonds were discovered near Kimberley in what is today known as the Northern Cape. The Kimberley diamond fields, and later discoveries in Gauteng, the Free State, and along the Atlantic coast, emerged as major sources of gem-quality diamonds, securing South Africa's position as the world's leading producer in the mid-twentieth century.

Gold

The discovery of the Witwatersrand goldfields in 1886 was a turning point in South Africa's history. The demand for franchise rights for English-speaking immigrants working on the new goldfields was the pretext Britain used to go to war with the Transvaal and Orange Free State in 1899.

The Anglo-Boer/South African War was the bloodiest, longest and most expensive war Britain engaged in between 1815 and 1915. It cost more than 200 million pounds and Britain lost more than 22 000 men. The Boers lost over 34 000 people and more than 15 000 black South Africans were killed.

Union and opposition

In 1910, the Union of South Africa was created out of the Cape, Natal, Transvaal and Free State. It was to be essentially a white union. Black opposition was inevitable, and the African National Congress (ANC) was founded in 1912 to protest the exclusion of black people from power. In 1921, the South African Communist Party was established at a time of heightened militancy. More discriminatory legislation was enacted. Meanwhile, Afrikaner nationalism, fuelled by job losses arising from a worldwide recession, was on the march.

The rise of apartheid

In 1948, the pro-Afrikaner National Party (NP) came to power with the ideology of apartheid, an even more rigorous and authoritarian approach than the previous segregationist policies. While white South Africa was cementing its power, black opposition politics were evolving. In 1943, a younger, more determined political grouping came to the fore with the launch of the ANC Youth League, a development, which was to foster the leadership of people such as Nelson Rolihlahla Mandela, Oliver Tambo and Walter Sisulu.

Repression

In 1961, the NP Government under Prime Minister HF Verwoerd declared South Africa a republic after winning a whites-only referendum. A new concern with racial purity was apparent in various legislation and residential segregation was enforced.

Separate development

At a time when much of Africa was on the verge of independence, the South African Government was devising its policy of separate development, dividing the African population into artificial ethnic “nations,” each with its own “homeland” and the prospect of “independence.” Forced removals from “white” areas affected some 3,5 million people, and vast rural slums were created in the homelands.

In 1949, the ANC adopted its Programme of Action, expressing the renewed militancy of the 1940s. The programme embodied a rejection of white domination and a call for action in the form of protests, strikes and demonstrations.

Defiance

The Defiance Campaign of the early 1950s carried mass mobilisation to new heights under the banner of non-violent resistance to the pass laws. In 1955, the Freedom Charter was drawn up at the Congress of the People in Soweto. The charter enunciated the principles of the struggle, binding the movement to a culture of human rights and non-racialism.

Soon the mass-based organisations, including the ANC and the Pan-Africanist Congress (PAC), were banned. Matters came to a head at Sharpeville in March 1960 when 69 PAC anti-pass demonstrators were killed.

A state of emergency was imposed, and detention without trial was introduced.

Struggle days

Leaders of the black political organisations at this time either went into exile or were arrested. In this climate, the ANC and PAC abandoned their long-standing commitment to non-violent resistance and turned to armed struggle.

Top leaders still inside the country, including members of the ANC's military wing, Umkhonto we Sizwe (Spear of the Nation), were arrested in 1963.

At the Rivonia Trial, eight ANC leaders, including Mr Nelson Mandela, convicted of sabotage (instead of treason, the original charge), were sentenced to life imprisonment.

The resurgence of resistance politics in the early 1970s was dramatic. June 1976 marked the beginning of a sustained anti-apartheid revolt. School pupils in Soweto rose up against apartheid education, followed by youth uprisings throughout the country.

Strong, legal vehicles for the democratic forces tested the State, whose response until then had been invariably heavy-handed repression.

Reform

Shaken by the scale of protest and opposition, the government embarked on a series of limited reforms in the early 1980s.

In 1983, the Constitution was reformed to allow the coloured and Indian minorities limited participation in separate and subordinate houses of parliament.

In 1986, the pass laws were scrapped. The international community strengthened its support for the anti-apartheid cause.

Mass resistance increasingly challenged the apartheid State, which resorted to intensified repression accompanied by eventual recognition that apartheid could not be sustained.

Apartheid's last days

Afrikaner elite openly started to pronounce in favour of a more inclusive society, with a number of businesspeople, students and academic leaders meeting publicly and privately with the ANC in exile.

Petty apartheid laws and symbols were openly challenged and eventually removed.

Together with a sliding economy, increasing internal dissent and international pressure, these developments inevitably led to historic changes and the fall of apartheid.

Democratic government

South Africa held its first democratic election in April 1994 under an interim Constitution. The ANC emerged with a 62% majority. South Africa was divided into nine new provinces to replace the four existing provinces and 10 black homelands. In terms of the interim Constitution, the NP and Inkatha Freedom Party participated in a government of national unity under President Mandela, South Africa's first democratically elected president.

The second democratic election, in 1999, saw the ANC increasing its majority to a point just short of two-thirds of the total vote.

In the April 2004 election, the ANC won the national vote with 69,68% and the celebration of 10 Years of Freedom attended by heads of state and government delegations from across the world.

In 2008, Mr Kgalema Motlanthe became President following the recalling of President Thabo Mbeki. On 22 April 2009, South Africa held national and provincial elections with about 76% of registered voters casting their votes. Jacob Zuma was inaugurated as President of South Africa on 9 May 2009.

The following year, a significant milestone for South Africa was the hosting of the 2010 FIFA World Cup™.

Municipal elections were held on 18 May 2011, electing new councils for all municipalities in the country.

October 2011 saw Statistics South Africa conducting a comprehensive national census. The census, which analysed the country's demographics, population distribution and access to services, average household size, income, migration, and mortality, was the third national population and housing count in post-apartheid South Africa. The exercise saw 156 000 field staff employed to count more than 14,6 million households.

South Africa has continued to build on its international profile. On 1 January 2011, the country started its second term as a non-permanent member of the United Nations

(UN) Security Council between 2011 and 2012, serving alongside the five permanent members, China, France, the Russian Federation, the United Kingdom and the United States of America, as well as elected members Bosnia and Herzegovina, Brazil, Colombia, Gabon, Germany, India, Lebanon, Nigeria and Portugal.

In 2011, as part of government's commitment to secure a better quality of life for all, the National Planning Commission in The Presidency finalised the draft National Development Plan (NDP): Vision for 2030. The plan is a step towards charting a new path for South Africa in dealing with the triple challenge of poverty, unemployment and inequality.

On 8 January 2012, Africa's oldest liberation movement, the ANC, celebrated 100 years of existence. This was a historic achievement, not only for the movement, but also for South Africa and the continent.

In May 2012, the Square Array Kilometre (SKA) Organisation announced that the SKA Project would be shared between South Africa and Australia, with a majority share coming to South Africa. The full dish array and the dense aperture array will be built in Africa.

In November 2012, South Africa was elected by the members of the UN General Assembly to the UN's 47-member Economic and Social Council.

In December 2012, President Zuma was re-elected as the president of the ANC during the ruling party's congress in Mangaung, Free State with Cyril Ramaphosa elected as the party's deputy president.

In July 2013, Ms Phumzile Mlambo-Ngcuka was appointed executive director of the UN Women Entity for Gender Equality and Empowerment of Women, and Ms Geraldine Fraser-Moleketi, was appointed director in the UN Development Programme's Bureau for Development Policy.

On 5 December 2013, South Africa's first democratically elected President and anti-apartheid icon Mandela died at the age of 95. Mr Mandela led South Africa's transition from white-minority rule in the 1990s, after 27 years in prison for his political activities.

He had been receiving intensive medical care at home for a lung infection after spending three months in hospital. His body lay in state at the Union Buildings from 11 to 13 December. He was buried in his home town of Qunu in the Eastern Cape on 15 December 2013.

South Africa celebrated 20 Years of Freedom in 2014, which was a historic milestone for the country. The Twenty Year Review, which was released in 2013, and the National Planning Commission's 2011 Diagnostic Report, highlight that poverty, inequality and unemployment continue to negatively affect the lives of many people.

Despite progress in reducing rural poverty and increasing access to basic services in rural areas over the past 20 years, rural areas are still characterised by great poverty and inequality. As stated in the NDP, by 2030, South Africa's rural communities must have better opportunities to participate fully in the economic, social and political life of the country.

Government's programme of radical economic transformation is about placing the economy on a qualitatively different path that ensures more rapid, sustainable growth, higher investment, increased employment, reduced inequality and deracialisation of the economy. The NDP sets a growth target of at least 5% a year, and emphasises measures to ensure that the benefits of growth are equitably shared.

South Africa's fifth general elections were held on 7 May 2014. It was also the first time that South African expatriates were allowed to vote in a South African national election.

The ANC won the National Assembly election (62,1%) and the official opposition Democratic Alliance (DA) won 22,2% of the votes, while the newly formed Economic Freedom Fighters (EFF) obtained 6,4% of the vote.

The ANC also won eight of the nine provincial legislatures. The EFF obtained over 10% of the votes in Gauteng, Limpopo and North West, and beat the DA to second place in Limpopo and North West. In the other six provinces won by the ANC, the DA obtained second place. In the Western Cape, the only province not won by the ANC, the DA increased its majority from 51,5% to 59,4%. In 2015, South Africa celebrated the 60th Anniversary of the Freedom Charter, which called for peace and friendship among nations. The 40th Anniversary of the 16 June 1976 Soweto Student Uprising was celebrated in 2016, along with the 20th Anniversary of the signing of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996.

The 2016 municipal elections were held on 3 August 2016. The ANC won 53,9% of the total vote, followed by the official opposition DA with 26,9% and the EFF with 8,2%.

In 2017, South Africa celebrated five years since the launch of the NDP, which outlines the goals to achieve the vision of a prosperous South Africa by tackling the triple challenge of unemployment, poverty and inequality by 2030.

South Africa celebrated the Centenary of the late Oliver Reginald Tambo in 2017, under the theme: "Life and Legacy of OR Tambo". He was one of the key drivers of South Africa's liberation and one of the founding fathers of the country's constitutional democracy.

At its 54th National Conference held at Nasrec in Soweto on 18 December 2017, the ANC elected Mr Ramaphosa as its president. Following the resignation of President Zuma in February 2018, Mr Ramaphosa was elected unopposed as the fifth President of democratic South Africa by the National Assembly on 15 February 2018.

In 2018, South Africa celebrated the centenary of two Struggle stalwarts, Tata Mandela and Mama Albertina Nontsikelelo Sisulu.

In 2019, South Africa celebrated 25 Years of Freedom. In May 2019, the country also held its sixth national and provincial elections. The ANC won 57,50% of the total vote, followed by the official opposition DA with 20,77% and the EFF with 10,79%.

On 25 May 2019, Mr Ramaphosa was inaugurated as the President for the sixth democratic administration.







OFFICIAL GUIDE TO
South Africa
2018/19

**People of
South Africa**

People

For 2019, Statistics South Africa (Stats SA) estimates the mid-year population at 58,78 million. Approximately 51,2% (approximately 30 million) of the population is female. The black African population is in the majority (47,4 million) and constitutes approximately 81% of the total South African population.

The white population is estimated at 4,7 million, the coloured population at 5,2 million and the Indian/Asian population at 1,5 million. Gauteng comprises the largest share of the South African population, with approximately 15,2 million people (25,8%) living in this province.

KwaZulu-Natal is the province with the second largest population, with an estimated 11,3 million people (19,2%) living in this province. With a population of approximately 1,26 million people (2,2%), Northern Cape remains the province with the smallest share of the South African population.

About 28,8% of the population is aged younger than 15 years and approximately 9,0% (5,3 million) is 60 years or older. Of those younger than 15 years of age, the majority reside in Gauteng (21,5%) and KwaZulu-Natal (21,1%). Of the elderly (those aged 60 years and older), the highest percentage 23,9% (1,27 million) reside in Gauteng. The proportion of elderly persons aged 60 and older is increasing over time.

Life expectancy at birth for 2019 is estimated at 61,5 years for males and 67,7 years for females.

The infant mortality rate for 2019 is estimated at 22,1 per 1 000 live births. The estimated overall HIV prevalence rate is approximately 13,5% among the South African population.

The total number of people living with HIV is estimated at approximately 7,97 million in 2019. For adults aged 15-49 years, an estimated 19,07% of the population is HIV positive.

The decline in the percentage of AIDS-related deaths since 2007 can be attributed to the increase in the roll-out of antiretroviral therapy (ART) over time. The national roll-out of ART began in 2005 with a target of one service point in each of the 53 districts of South Africa at the time (later reduced to 52 districts).

The estimated number of AIDS-related deaths declined consistently since 2007 from 267 417 to 126 805 AIDS-related deaths in 2019.

Access to ART has changed significantly over time, altering the pattern of mortality over time. It has extended the lifespan of many in South Africa, who would have otherwise died at an earlier age, as evidenced in the decline of AIDS deaths post 2006.

Migration patterns

Migration is an important demographic process, as it shapes the age structure and distribution of the provincial population.

According to Stats SA's *Mid-year population estimates* for 2019, for the period 2016-2021, Gauteng and Western Cape are estimated to experience the largest inflow of migrants of approximately, 1 643 590 and 493 621 respectively.

Gauteng and Western Cape received the highest number of in-migrants for all periods. The Eastern Cape and Gauteng experienced the largest number of outflow of migrants.

Owing to its relatively larger population size, Gauteng achieved the highest number of in- and out-flows of migration. Gauteng, Mpumalanga, Northern Cape, North West and Western Cape received positive net migration over all three periods.

For all periods, the number of international migrants entering the provinces was highest in Gauteng, with Western Cape ranking second.

The provincial estimates show that Gauteng has the largest share of the population followed by KwaZulu-Natal, Western Cape and Eastern Cape. Inter-provincial as well as international migration patterns significantly influence the provincial population numbers and structures in South Africa.

By 2019, about 11,4% of South Africa's population lived in Western Cape. Northern Cape has the smallest share of the population (2,2%). Free State has the second smallest share of the South African population constituting 4,9% of the population. Limpopo and Eastern Cape (both 33,3% respectively) have the highest proportions of persons younger than 15 years.

The highest proportions of elderly persons aged 60 years and above are found in Eastern Cape (11,3%), Northern Cape (10,2%) and Western Cape (10,0%).

Registration of births

In South Africa, the right to identity – which includes nationality, name and family relations – is enshrined in Section 28 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996. The Births and Deaths Act of 1992 governs the registration of births in South Africa.

The Births and Deaths Registration Act of 1992 has been amended several times, with the last amendment, Births and Deaths Registration Amendment Act, being made in 2010. The registration of births in South Africa falls under the mandate of the Department of Home Affairs.

To better enforce the registration of births, the 2010 amendment Act mandates the registrations of births within 30 days from date of birth.

The Constitution and the Act reaffirm South Africa's commitment to Articles seven and eight of the United Nations Convention on the Rights of the Child and the African Charter on the rights and welfare of the child.

The agreements mandate the preservation of children's rights to identity, a nationality, to a name from birth, family ties and birth registration immediately after birth. The realisation of the right to be registered is closely linked to the safeguarding of a whole range of fundamental rights, including healthcare, social security, education, participation and protection.

The primary purpose of the records derived from the civil-registration process is to create a permanent record of the birth occurrence and for the issuing of a birth certificate, which is a personal document to attest birth registration and the most visible evidence of the government's legal recognition of the child.

In essence, without a birth certificate the unregistered babies/children essentially do not legally exist.

Languages

South Africa is a multicultural society that is characterised by its rich linguistic diversity. Language is an indispensable tool that can be used to deepen democracy and also contribute to the social, cultural, intellectual, economic and political life of the South African society.

The country is multilingual with 11 official languages, each of which is guaranteed equal status. Most South Africans are multilingual and able to speak at least two or more of the official languages.

According to Stats SA's General Household Survey of 2018, nationally, just over one quarter (25,3%) of individuals spoke isiZulu at home, while 14,8% of individuals spoke isiXhosa, and 12,2% spoke Afrikaans.

English was spoken by 8,1% of individuals at home, making it the sixth most common home language in South Africa. English is, however, the second most commonly spoken language outside the household (16,6%) after isiZulu (25,1%), and preceding isiXhosa (12,8%).

It is notable that the use of most languages outside the household declined, with the notable exceptions of isiZulu and Setswana.

The Indian/Asian population group was the most monolingual with 92,1% who spoke English at home. More than three-quarters (77,4%) of coloured individuals spoke Afrikaans at home while 20,1% used English.

More than three-fifths (61,2%) of white South Africans spoke Afrikaans and 36,3% spoke English. By comparison, black Africans spoke a much larger variety of languages. Besides the two most commonly spoken languages, isiZulu (31,1%) and isiXhosa (18,2%), notable sub-groups of black African individuals also spoke Sepedi (12,4%), Setswana (11,1%) and Sesotho (9,7%). Other official languages are isiNdebele (1,6%), Siswati (2,8), Tshivenda (2,5) and Xitsonga (3,6).

In terms of the Use of Official Languages Act in 2012, and as part of promoting social cohesion and nation-building, every government department, public entity and enterprise is expected to establish a language unit and adopt a language policy.

Religious beliefs

According to Stats SA's Community Survey 2016, the distribution of religious beliefs in South Africa is as follows:

- Christianity – 43 423 717
- Islam – 892 685
- Traditional African religion – 2 454 887
- Hinduism – 561 268
- Buddhism – 24 808
- Bahaism – 6 881
- Judaism – 49 470
- Atheism – 52 598
- Agnosticism – 32 944
- No religious affiliation/belief – 5 964 892
- Other – 1 482 210
- Do not know – 704 358.







OFFICIAL GUIDE TO
South Africa
2018/19
Government

South Africa is a constitutional democracy with a three-tier system of government and an independent judiciary. The national, provincial and local levels of government all have legislative and executive authority in their own spheres, and are defined in the Constitution as “distinctive, interdependent and interrelated.”

The Constitution

The Constitution is the supreme law of the land. No other law or government action can supersede the provisions of the Constitution. The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996 was approved by the Constitutional Court on 4 December 1996 and took effect on 4 February 1997.

Government

Government consists of national, provincial and local spheres. The powers of the legislature, executive and courts are separate.

Parliament

Parliament consists of the National Assembly and the National Council of Provinces (NCOP). Parliamentary sittings are open to the public. Several measures have been implemented to make Parliament more accessible and accountable.

National Assembly

The National Assembly consists of no fewer than 350 and no more than 400 members, elected through a system of proportional representation for a five-year term. It elects the President and scrutinises the executive.

National Council of Provinces

The NCOP consists of 54 permanent members and 36 special delegates. The purpose of the NCOP is to represent the interests of the provinces in the national sphere of government.

Government clusters

Clusters were established to foster an integrated approach to governance that is aimed at improving government planning, decision making and service delivery. The main objective is to ensure proper coordination of all government programmes at national and provincial levels.

The seven clusters are:

- Infrastructure Development

- Economic Sectors and Employment
- Governance and Administration
- Human Development
- Social Protection and Community Development
- International Cooperation, Trade and Security
- Justice, Crime Prevention and Security.

The Presidency, June 2018

President: Cyril Ramaphosa

Deputy President: David Mabuza

Izimbizo

The *Izimbizo* programme is a communication platform that enables the citizenry to have a meaningful and direct engagement with members of the national, provincial and local executive. It promotes unmediated face-to-face communication with the public. It provides an opportunity to political principals to share government plans to improve service delivery and to listen to issues facing communities.

Inter-Ministerial Committees (IMCs)

The President of the Republic of South Africa (and in certain instances the Cabinet) appoints IMCs for specific purposes that require the attention and dedication of a team of certain Ministers. The mandate of the IMCs is limited to the matter that they are established to execute. Some of the past and present IMCs included the following:

- IMC on the Prevention and Combating of Corruption
- IMC on Information and Publicity
- IMC on State Funerals
- IMC on the Revitalisation of Distressed Mining communities
- IMC on Immigration Regulations
- IMC on Investment Promotion
- IMC on Local Government Elections
- IMC on the Centenaries of Mama Albertina Sisulu and Tata Nelson
- IMC on the South Africa Investment Conference
- IMC on Land Reform
- IMC on Illegal Mining
- IMC on Climate Change
- IMC on Comprehensive Social Security
- IMC on Electricity Reticulation
- IMC on Energy.

The Presidency

The Presidency is the executive manager of government. It is situated in the Union Buildings, Pretoria, and has a subsidiary office in Tuynhuys, Cape Town.

The NDP offers a long-term socio-economic development road map. The NDP: Vision for 2030 focuses on the following strategic areas of development:

- creating jobs
- expanding infrastructure
- sustainable use of resources
- transforming urban and rural spaces
- improving education and training
- providing quality healthcare
- building a capable state
- fighting crime and corruption
- uniting the nation.

The Deputy President

The President appoints the Deputy President from among the members of the National Assembly.

Cabinet

Premiers, as at October 2019	
Province	Premier
Eastern Cape	Oscar Mabuyane
Free State	Sefora Ntombela
Gauteng	David Makhura
KwaZulu-Natal	Sihle Zikalala
Limpopo	Stanley Mathabatha
Mpumalanga	Refilwe Mtshweni
Northern Cape	Zamani Saul
North West	Job Mokgoro
Western Cape	Alan Winde

Cabinet consists of the President, as head of the Cabinet, the Deputy President and Ministers. The President appoints the Deputy President and Ministers, assigns their powers and functions and may dismiss them.

Cabinet Ministers and Deputy Ministers, as at October 2019

Portfolio	Minister	Deputy Minister
Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development	Thoko Didiza	Sdumo Dlamini Mcebisi Skwatsha
Basic Education	Angie Motshekga	Regina Mhaule
Communications and Digital Technologies	Stella Ndabeni-Abrahams	Pinky Kekana
Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs	Nkosazana Dlamini Zuma	Obed Bapela Parks Tau
Defence and Military Veterans	Nosiviwe Mapisa-Nqakula	Thabang Makwetla
Employment and Labour	Thulas Nxesi	Boitumelo Moloi
Environment, Forestry and Fisheries	Barbara Creecy	Maggie Sotyu
Finance	Tito Mboweni	David Maseondo
Health	Zweli Mkhize	Joe Phaahla
Higher Education, Science and Technology	Blade Nzimande	Buti Manamela
Home Affairs	Aaron Motsoaledi	Njabulo Nzuza
Human Settlements, Water and Sanitation	Lindiwe Sisulu	Pam Tshwete David Mahlobo
International Relations and Cooperation	Naledi Pandor	Alvin Botes Candith Mashego-Dlamini
Justice and Correctional Services	Ronald Lamola	John Jeffery Inkosi Phathekile Holomisa
Mineral Resources and Energy	Gwede Mantashe	—
Police	Bheki Cele	Cassel Mathale
Public Enterprises	Pravin Gordhan	Phumulo Masualle
Public Service and Administration	Senzo Mchunu	Sindy Chikunga
Public Works and Infrastructure	Patricia de Lille	Noxolo Kiviet
Small Business Development	Khumbudzo Ntshavheni	Rosemary Capa
Social Development	Lindiwe Zulu	Hendrietta Bogopane-Zulu
Sports, Arts and Culture	Nathi Mthethwa	Nocawe Mafu
State Security	Ayanda Dlodlo	Zizi Kodwa

The Presidency	Jackson Mthembu	Thembi Siweya
The Presidency: Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities	Maite Nkoana-Mashabane	Hlengiwe Mkhize
Tourism	Nkhensani Kubayi-Ngubane	Fish Mahlalela
Trade and Industry	Ebrahim Patel	Fikile Majola Nomalungelo Gina
Transport	Fikile Mbalula	Dikeledi Magadzi

No more than two Ministers may be appointed from outside the National Assembly.

National government

In May 2019, President Ramaphosa announced the appointment of a reconfigured national executive following the 8 May general elections.

To strengthen accountability, the President further directed that the areas of responsibility of all Deputy Ministers must be clearly delineated.

In the departments with two Deputy Ministers, the Ministers will be responsible for the overall functioning of the Ministry and Department and under the Minister's direction and guidance, the responsibilities between the Deputy Ministers are delineated as follows:

Ministry of Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development:

- Land Reform – Deputy Minister Mcebisi Skwatsha.
- Rural Development – Deputy Minister Sdumo Dlamini.

Ministry of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs:

- Local Government – Deputy Minister Parks Tau.
- Traditional Affairs – Deputy Minister Obed Bapela.

Ministry of Human Settlements, Water and Sanitation:

- Human Settlements – Deputy Minister Pam Tshwete.
- Water and Sanitation – Deputy Minister David Mahlobo.

Ministry of Justice and Correctional Services:

- Correctional Services – Deputy Minister Nkosi Phathekile Holomisa.
- Justice and Constitutional Development – Deputy Minister John Jeffery.

The Ministers oversee the following departments and entities as per their delegated portfolios:

- The Minister of Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development is responsible for the newly reconstituted Department of Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development (DALRRD). This is a new department arising from a merger between the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries (DAFF) and the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (DRDLR).
- The Minister of Basic Education is responsible for the Department of Basic Education (DBE). The DBE will lead an integrated Early Childhood Development function in collaboration with the Department of Social Development (DSD) and the Department of Health (DoH).
- The Minister of Communications and Digital Technologies is responsible for the Department of Communications (DoC) and Digital Technologies (DCDT). This is a new department arising from a merger between the DoC and the Department of Telecommunications and Postal Services (DTPS).
- The Minister of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs is responsible for the Department of Cooperative Governance (DCoG) and the Department of Traditional Affairs (DTA).
- The Minister of Defence and Military Veterans is responsible for the Department of Defence and the Department of Military Veterans.
- The Minister of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries is responsible for the Department of the Environment, Forestry and Fisheries (DEFF). This department arises from the transfer of the functions of forestry and fisheries from the DAFF.
- The Minister of Employment and Labour is responsible for the Department of Employment and Labour (DEL). This department will coordinate all government efforts to create jobs and reduce unemployment, and will be required to change its approach from mere compliance enforcement to facilitating job creation.
- The Minister of Finance is responsible for National Treasury, the South African Revenue Service and the Government Pensions Administration Agency. The Infrastructure Development Management System (IDMS) function, currently under National Treasury, has been transferred to the Department of Public Works and Infrastructure (DPWI).

- The Minister of Health is responsible for the DoH.
- The Minister of Higher Education, Science and Technology is responsible for the Department of Higher Education and Training and the Department of Science and Innovation (DSI).
- The Minister of Home Affairs is responsible for the Department of Home Affairs (DHA) and the Government Printing Works (GPW).
- The Minister of Human Settlements, Water and Sanitation is responsible for the Department of Human Settlements and the Department of Water and Sanitation (DWS).
- The Minister of International Relations and Cooperation is responsible for the Department of International Relations and Cooperation.
- The Minister of Justice and Correctional Services is responsible for the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development, the Department of Correctional Services and the Office of the Chief Justice.
- The Minister of Mineral Resources and Energy is responsible for the new Department of Mineral Resources and Energy (DMRE). This department arises from a merger between the Department of Mineral Resources (DMR) and the Department of Energy (DoE).
- The Minister of Police is responsible for the South African Police Service, the Independent Police Investigation Directorate and the Civilian Secretariat for the Police Service.
- The Minister in The Presidency is responsible for the Department of Planning, Monitoring and Evaluation (DPME) including the National Planning Secretariat, Statistics South Africa (Stats SA), the Government Communication and Information System (GCIS), the Media Development and Diversity Agency and Brand SA.
- The Minister in The Presidency for Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities is responsible for the new Department of Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities (DWYPD) and the National Youth Development Agency. The DWYPD arises from the transfer of the youth function from the DPME and the function of people with disabilities from the DSD.
- The Minister of Public Enterprises is responsible for the Department of Public Enterprises.

- The Minister of Public Service and Administration is responsible for the Department of Public Service and Administration (DPSA), the National School of Government (NSG) and the Centre for Public Service Innovation (CPSI).
- The Minister of Public Works and Infrastructure is responsible for the DPWI. Over and above what it was previously responsible for, the department will assume coordinating responsibility for all public infrastructure development.
- The Minister of Small Business Development is responsible for the Department of Small Business Development.
- The Minister of Social Development is responsible for the DSD.
- The Minister of Sports, Arts and Culture is responsible for the new Department of Sports, Arts and Culture (DSAC). This department arises from a merger between the Department of Sport and Recreation and the Department of Arts and Culture (DAC).
- The Minister State Security is responsible for the State Security Agency. The Minister of Tourism is responsible for the Department of Tourism.
- The Minister of Trade and Industry is responsible for the Department of Trade, Industry and Competition (the dtic). The Economic Development Department (EDD) has been incorporated into the Department of Trade and Industry (the dti). The Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Commission has been transferred from the EDD to the DPWI.
- The Minister of Transport is responsible for the Department of Transport.
- The President is the Executive Authority of the department, The Presidency.
- The Public Service Commission (PSC) is responsible for the department, the Office of the PSC.

The following 10 departments were merged into five departments respectively:

- The DAFF (without the forestry and fisheries portfolios) was merged with the DRDLR to form the new DALRRD;
- The DoC and the DTPS were merged to form the new DCDT;
- The DMR and the DoE were merged to form the new DMRE;
- The Department of Sport and Recreation and the DAC were merged to form the new DSAC;

- The EDD was merged into the **the dti** to form the new department, **the dtic**.

Other changes included renaming the former Department of Science and Technology to the DSI.

Provincial government

Each of the nine provinces has its own legislature of 30 to 80 members. They elect the premiers who head the executive councils.

Traditional leadership

The National House of traditional Leaders was established in terms of the then National House of Traditional Leaders Act of 1997. Its objectives and functions are to promote the role of traditional leadership within a democratic constitutional dispensation, enhance unity and understanding among traditional communities and advise national government.

Provincial houses of traditional leaders were established in all six provinces that have traditional leaders, namely the Eastern Cape, Free State, KwaZulu-Natal, Limpopo, Mpumalanga and North West.

The national and provincial houses of traditional leaders enhance the cooperative relationships within national and provincial government, while the establishment of local houses of traditional leaders deepens and cements the relationship between municipalities and traditional leaders on customary law and development initiatives.

Local government

Local government is the sphere of government closest to the people. In accordance with the Constitution and the Organised Local Government Act of 1997, which formally recognises organised local-government associations, organised local government may designate up to 10 part-time representatives to represent municipalities and participate in proceedings of the NCOP.

Municipalities

The redemarcation of municipal boundaries in South Africa after the 2016 Local Government Elections reduced the number of municipalities from 278 to 257, comprising eight metropolitan, 44 district and 205 local municipalities.

Municipalities govern on a four-year term basis and run local affairs subject to national and provincial legislation. They are focused on growing local economies and providing infrastructure and services.

South Africa has eight metropolitan municipalities:

- Buffalo City (East London)
- City of Cape Town
- Ekurhuleni Metropolitan Municipality (East Rand)
- City of eThekweni (Durban)
- City of Johannesburg
- Mangaung Municipality (Bloemfontein)
- Nelson Mandela Metropolitan Municipality (Port Elizabeth)
- City of Tshwane (Pretoria).

Department of Cooperative Governance

The DCoG is mandated to develop and monitor the implementation of national policy and legislation aimed at transforming and strengthening key institutions and mechanisms of governance in national, provincial and local government to fulfil their developmental role; develop, promote and monitor mechanisms, systems and structures to enable integrated service delivery and implementation within government; and promote sustainable development by providing support to and exercising oversight of provincial and local government.

The department administers the local government equitable share to municipalities to fund core municipal functions, and the operation and maintenance of basic services infrastructure such as water and sanitation, electricity, refuse removal, and sports and recreation facilities.

Department of Traditional Affairs

The DTA is mandated to oversee a range of tasks inherent in dealing with issues related to traditional affairs, including KhoiSan leadership, and supporting the development of stable and cohesive interfaith communities.

The 2003 White Paper on Traditional Leadership and Governance sets out a national framework, and norms and standards that define the role and place of the institution of traditional leadership within the South African system of democratic governance.

It seeks to support and transform the institution in accordance with constitutional imperatives and to restore

the integrity and legitimacy of traditional leadership in line with the African indigenous law and customs subject to the Constitution.

Department of Public Service and Administration

The DPSA draws its mandate from Section 195(1) of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996, which sets out basic values and principles the Public Service should adhere to, and the Public Service Act of 1994.

In terms of the act, the Minister of Public Service and Administration is responsible for establishing norms and standards relating to:

- the functions of the Public Service;
- organisational structures and establishments of departments, and other organisational and governance arrangements in the Public Service;
- the conditions of service and other employment practices for employees;
- labour relations in the Public Service;
- the health and wellness of employees;
- information management in the Public Service;
- electronic government;
- integrity, ethics, conduct and anti-corruption in the Public Service; and
- transformation, reform, innovation and any other matters to improve the effectiveness and efficiency of the Public Service and its service delivery to the public.

Public Service Commission

The PSC is tasked and empowered to, amongst others, investigate, monitor, and evaluate the organisation and administration of the Public Service.

This mandate also entails the evaluation of achievements, or lack thereof of government programmes. The PSC also has an obligation to promote measures that would ensure effective and efficient performance within the Public Service and to promote values and principles of public administration as set out in the Constitution, throughout the Public Service.

National School of Government

The NSG is intended to educate, train, professionalise and develop a highly capable, skilled and committed public

service cadre, with a sense of national duty and a common culture and ethos. It nurtures a culture of professionalism and innovative thinking and serve as a catalyst for reform and modernisation in pursuit of a performance-oriented public service.

Centre for Public Service Innovation

The CPSI is tasked to, among other things, establish norms and standards relating to transformation, reform and innovation to improve the effectiveness and efficiency of the Public Service and its service delivery to the public. The centre aims to unearth innovation in government through initiatives such as the annual Public Sector Innovation Awards.

Department of Public Works and Infrastructure

Following the reconfiguration of government departments in June 2019, the Department of Public Works was renamed the DPWI.

The department promotes government's objectives of economic development, good governance and rising living standards and prosperity by providing and managing the accommodation and infrastructure needs of national departments, by leading the national Expanded Public Works Programme and transforming the construction and property industries.

Community development workers (CDWs) serve as a link between communities with many government services and programmes. Located within communities, CDWs assist citizens by helping them to access services such as health, welfare, housing, agriculture, economic activity, education and training, and employment opportunities.

Department of Home Affairs

The DHA's services are divided into two broad categories: civic services and immigration services. The primary mandate of the department is to secure and manage identity and international migration through the delivery of enabling services to all citizens, foreign nationals, government and the private sector.

Government Printing Works

The GPW is mandated to provide security printing and ancillary services to all organs of state in all spheres

of government. It was converted to a full government component in 2009 in terms of the Public Service Amendment Act of 1999, enabling it to start operating on sound business principles. The entity performs its mandate subject to policies as prescribed by the Minister of Home Affairs.

Department of Employment and Labour

Following the reconfiguration of government departments in June 2019, the Department of Labour was renamed the DEL.

In October 2018, the Presidential Jobs Summit was held in Johannesburg to explore mechanisms to ensure the economy grows and becomes more productive, and to upscale investment in the economy.

The engagement among government, business, labour and community also set out to ensure that workers are better skilled and that the economic infrastructure is expanded.





Luthuli

Order of the Compan
of O.R. Tambo



OFFICIAL GUIDE TO
South Africa
2018/19
**The
Presidency**

As the executive manager of government, The Presidency is at the apex of the system of government in the Republic of South Africa. The Presidency is situated in the Union Buildings, Pretoria, and has another subsidiary office in Tuynhuys, Cape Town.

The mandate of The Presidency is to ensure that the President is able to execute constitutional responsibilities in leading and galvanising the whole of government and society to implement the electoral mandate.

Chapter 1 of the National Development Plan (NDP) sets out a vision for increased government integration towards developing policy in a complex domestic and international environment.

This is given expression by Outcome 11 (create a better South Africa, a better Africa and a better world) and Outcome 12 (an efficient, effective and development-oriented public service) of government's 2014-2019 Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF), with which the work of The Presidency is closely aligned.

Following the reconfiguration of government departments in June 2019, the Minister in The Presidency is now responsible for the following organisations:

- Department of Planning, Monitoring and Evaluation (DPME)
- Statistics South Africa (Stats SA);
- Government Communication and Information System (GCIS);
- Media Development and Diversity Agency (MDDA); and
- Brand South Africa (Brand SA).

The Minister in The Presidency for Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities is responsible for the:

- Department of Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities (DWYPD); and
- National Youth Development Agency (NYDA).

Promoting nation-building and social cohesion

The Presidency continues to provide support to initiatives that promote nation-building and social cohesion.

The Deputy President continues to lead the Moral Regeneration Movement, a civil-society organisation mandated to facilitate and coordinate processes and initiatives aimed at promoting collective activism on issues of moral renewal.

As part of delegated responsibilities, the Deputy President also leads the government's efforts to fast-track land reform.

The President leads initiatives on national days, national orders and special events, and use them as platforms to promote nation-building and social cohesion.

Advancing South Africa's interests

The fundamental role of The Presidency in the international arena is to assist the President and Deputy President in advancing South Africa's interests in the global community.

It provides strategic and administrative support to unilateral, bilateral and multilateral meetings and summits, and state visits; and assists in fulfilling South Africa's obligations to the United Nations, the Brazil-Russia-India-China-South Africa group of countries, Group of 20, African Union, Southern African Development Community, and regional and continental peacekeeping processes.

Promoting an integrated approach to governance

The Presidency endeavours to improve coordination among all government departments to ensure that policies are implemented in line with national priorities, that executive authorities and departments are better prepared to engage and understand the Cabinet system, and that Cabinet members take collective decisions and responsibilities.

This requires the department to provide training or briefing sessions on Cabinet decision-making processes for relevant officials in ministerial offices and offices of directors-general.

Executive orientation sessions are also provided to Cabinet members and their staff, as and when required.

Operationalising the e-Cabinet system

The e-Cabinet system is a tool used to streamline Cabinet's decision-making processes, ensuring that an integrated approach to governance is adopted.

The system enables members of the Executive, heads of department and executive support staff to share, manage and store information securely, and provides a platform for collaboration among relevant support staff.

The system, which has been designed, developed, installed, piloted and made available to all Cabinet members, as well as certain ministerial and Cabinet secretariat personnel via

an online portal, was expected to be operationalised after receiving security certification in 2018/19.

Department of Planning, Monitoring and Evaluation

The DPME is mandated to:

- facilitate the implementation of the NDP through the development of sectorspecific and outcome-specific medium-term plans and delivery agreements, and monitor and evaluate the implementation of these plans;
- ensure the alignment of departmental strategic and annual plans and budget allocations with the MTSF;
- facilitate socioeconomic impact assessments of legislation and regulations;
- monitor the performance of individual national and provincial government departments and municipalities, and related improvement plans, and facilitate targeted intervention programmes;
- monitor frontline service delivery and manage the presidential hotline;
- develop and implement the annual national evaluations plan and support the national evaluations system; promote good planning, monitoring and evaluation practices in government;

Chapter 13 of the NDP sets out a vision towards building a capable and developmental state. This vision is supported by Outcome 12 (an efficient, effective and development-oriented public service) of government's 2014-2019 MTSF, with which the work of the DPME is directly aligned.

The department provides support for the implementation of the NDP and government's 2019-2024 MTSF by monitoring and improving the capacity of state institutions.

This will be achieved through the development and use of appropriate tools, such as the Management Performance Assessment Tool and the Local Government Management Improvement Model, that generate monitoring reports regarding the state of compliance with management practices in the three spheres of government.

Statistics South Africa

Stats SA is responsible for the production and coordination of official and other statistics on changing dynamics in the economy, society and the environment as the country moves

towards the realisation of the NDPs's vision of a state that plays a developmental and transformative role in the lives of its people.

The department supports Outcome 4 (decent employment through inclusive growth) and Outcome 8 (sustainable human settlements and improved quality of household life) of government's 2014-2019 MTSF by contributing to enhanced planning, policy responsiveness and effectiveness, and promoting evidence-based decision-making.

Stats SA publishes more than 200 statistical releases each year, and compiles statistical research that measures development against the NDP and government's 2014-2019 MTSF, in conjunction with global and continental agendas for sustainable development.

The coordination of statistics between organs of state is crucial in achieving consistency and efficiency in the production of official statistics.

In recognising this need, the department began the process of revising statistical legislation by holding stakeholder consultations between 2015/16 and 2018/19, with the aim of driving statistical reform.

Particular attention was given to coordination and institutional arrangements between organs of state, statistical geography, the data revolution, and a state-wide statistical service. Based on the outcomes of stakeholder consultations, a draft Statistics Amendment Bill was expected to be tabled in Parliament in 2019/20.

In addition, the department has compiled an integrated statistical indicator framework to guide and coordinate the production of official and other statistical data in the national statistics system, which is set to be rolled out over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) period.

To maintain an adequate supply of statistical information over the MTEF period, the department will continue to focus on planning for South Africa's next census, which is scheduled for 2021.

As part of the planning process, the design of statistical tools and instruments, as well as the development of a georeferenced spatial information frame, was scheduled for 2019/20.

Also intended for adoption in Census 2021, and as part of the department's broader focus on modernisation, is the use of digital data collection methods such as computer-assisted telephone and personal interviews, and online interviews.

Activities associated with Census 2021 include a trial run and spatial planning in 2019/20, piloting in 2020/21 and data collection in 2021/22.

With effect from June 2019, Stats SA changed from using the drum logo to using the Coat of Arms as its logo.

Government Communication and Information System

The mandate of the GCIS is derived from Section 195(g) of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996, which stipulates that the public should be provided with information that is timely, accurate and accessible.

This is in support of the constitutional principles of freedom of expression, transparency and openness of government. The department is responsible for providing strategic leadership and coordinating government communication to ensure that the public is informed and have access to government programmes and policies that benefit them.

The NDP emphasises the need to unite all South Africans around a common goal, ensure citizens are active in their own development, and build a capable and developmental state.

This is given expression by Outcome 12 (an efficient, effective and development-oriented public service) and Outcome 14 (nation-building and social cohesion) of government's 2014-2019 MTSF, with which the work of the GCIS is directly aligned.

To support the realisation of these outcomes, the department will continue to focus on providing and facilitating strategic government communication and facilitating active citizen participation.

The department provides information about government policies, plans, programmes and activities to the public. Among other things, the GCIS is responsible for maintaining government's website (www.gov.za), which provides general information about government.

Among other products, the GCIS publishes the *South Africa Yearbook*, *Official Guide to South Africa* (formerly *Pocket Guide to South Africa*), *Vuk'uzenzele* newspaper, *Public Sector Manager* magazine and *My District Today* newsletter. It is also responsible for the South African Government News Agency, SAnews.gov.za.

The Thusong Service Centre Programme enables communities to access government information and services.

Thusong Service Centres are one-stop centres providing integrated services and information from government and other civil society groups, to communities close to where they live as part of a comprehensive strategy to better their lives.

They also enable communities to access opportunities offered by other civil-society groups such as businesses, non-governmental organisations and parastatals.

The GCIS also gathers public opinion, research and analysis of media coverage to understand the communications environment and to inform government messages.

The department provides media bulk-buying services, which are designed to reduce the cost to government on advertising; facilitate a rapid response mechanism to hasten government's response to issues arising in the media; and provide media production services to support other government departments.

Media Development and Diversity Agency

The MDDA promotes media development and diversity to ensure that all citizens can access information in a language of their choice, and to transform media access, ownership and control patterns in South Africa.

It is a statutory development agency for promoting and ensuring media development and diversity, and a partnership between the South African Government and major print and broadcasting companies to assist in, amongst others, developing community and small commercial media in South Africa.

Its main target audiences are historically disadvantaged communities, historically diminished language and cultural groups; and inadequately served communities.

The mandate of the MDDA is enshrined in law in the MDDA Act of 2002 and aims to:

- create an enabling environment for media development and diversity which reflects the needs and aspirations of all South Africans.
- redress exclusion and marginalisation of disadvantaged communities and persons from access to the media and the media industry.
- promote media development and diversity by providing support, primarily to community and small commercial media projects.

The MDDA will not fund the following, amongst others:

- Media projects owned and/or controlled by the government

or other funders of MDDA (Caxton, e-tv, Independent Newspapers, Johnnic Communications, Kagiso Media, Media 24, M-Net, Primedia, SABC);

- Special events licensees or once-off publications (except in exceptional circumstances);
- Media projects owned or controlled by any political party;
- Any advocacy except if it promotes media development and diversity;
- Conferences/seminars and attendance at any of these;
- Media earmarked for foreign audiences; and
- Media aimed at reinforcing/boosting/promoting any particular entity/organisation that suits only the ends of that entity/organisation.

Brand South Africa

Brand SA develops and implements a proactive and coordinated international marketing and communications strategy for South Africa to contribute to job creation and poverty reduction, and to attract inward investment, trade and tourism.

The mission of Brand SA is to:

- develop and articulate a South African Nation Brand identity that will advance South Africa's long-term positive reputation and global competitiveness.
- seek the involvement and cooperation of various stakeholders in building awareness and the image of the Nation Brand domestically and internationally.
- seek to build individual alignment to the Nation Brand in South Africa, and pride and patriotism amongst South Africans.

Its strategic objective is to inspire and unify civil society, business, government and the media to build the reputation of South Africa, and contribute to its global competitiveness.

Department of Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities

The new DWYPD is uniquely poised at the centre of government to coordinate and provide oversight in ensuring that government implements inclusive programmes geared towards closing gaps in the representation of women, youth and persons with disabilities.

Its focus is on intersectionality because women, youth and persons with disabilities are often disadvantaged by multiple

sources of oppression – race, class, gender, sexual identity and other identity markers, and these markers intersect to create complicated layers of oppression.

Among other things, the department plans to develop a database of unemployed graduates and in partnership with the Department of Employment and Labour, the NYDA, private sector and the sector education and training sectors, to ensure the employment of professionals.

It aims to galvanise the private sector to create opportunities for the youth and persons with disabilities.

National Youth Development Agency

The NYDA aims to initiate, implement, facilitate and monitor youth development interventions aimed at reducing youth unemployment and promoting social cohesion.

It plays a leading role in ensuring that all major stakeholders such as the government, private sector and civil society, prioritise youth development and contribute towards identifying and implementing long-lasting solutions that address youth development challenges.

The NYDA has shifted its primary core business away from Enterprise Finance towards Education and Skills Development.

The fundamental change in this area of development is the change from loan provision to grant provision for young entrepreneurs.

The NYDA no longer offers loan finance to young entrepreneurs; the agency provides financial support in the form of micro-finance grants to young entrepreneurs and youth cooperatives.

The objective of the NYDA Grant Funding is to provide young entrepreneurs with an opportunity to access both the financial and non-financial business development support to establish their survivalist businesses.

The programme focuses on youth entrepreneurs who are just coming into existence and beginning to display signs of future potential but are not yet fully developed.

The Grant Funding starts from R1 000 to a maximum of R200 000 for any individual or youth cooperative. For agriculture and technology-related projects, the maximum threshold is R250 000.

The NYDA continues with efforts directed at economic participation offering a range of products, programmes

and services to young entrepreneurs in need, albeit as a secondary focus.

The new plan of the NYDA focuses on tailor-made interventions for job preparedness and placement, a focus on scholarship provision for youth who excel in schools, the scaling up of the YouthBuild Programme for out-of-school youth, the increase of second chance opportunities for matriculants and the intensification of a highly successful career guidance programme.

Furthermore, the NYDA designs and implements programmes that are aimed at improving the lives of young people, as well as avail opportunities to youth.

These programmes could be clustered as follows:

- **Individual (Micro) level:** The NYDA provides direct services to youth in the form of information provision, career guidance services, mentorship, skills development and training, entrepreneurial development and support, health awareness programmes and involvement in sport.
- **Community (Meso) level:** The NYDA encourages young people to be catalysts for change in their communities through involvement in community development activities, social-cohesion initiatives, National Youth Service programmes and social dialogues.
- **Provincial and National (Macro) level:** Through its policy development, partnerships and research programmes, the NYDA facilitates the participation of youth in developing key policy inputs, which shape the socio-economic landscape of South Africa.



OFFICIAL GUIDE TO
South Africa
2018/19

**Agriculture, Land
Reform and Rural
Development**

Agriculture plays an important role in the process of economic development and can contribute significantly to household food security. The National Development Plan (NDP) sets out a broad vision of eliminating poverty and reducing inequality by 2030.

The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries (DAFF) was disestablished in June 2019. The agriculture function was incorporated into the new Department of Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development (DALRRD), while the forestry and fisheries functions were incorporated into the new Department of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries.

This vision is supported by Outcome 4 (decent employment through inclusive economic growth), outcome 7 (comprehensive rural development and land reform) and Outcome 10 (protect and enhance our environmental assets and natural resources) of government's 2014-2019 Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF).

According to Statistics South Africa's (Stats SA) General Household Survey (GHS) of 2018, only 14,8% of South African households were involved in some sort of agricultural production activities during the reference period. While 37,1% of households in Limpopo and 29,3% of households in Eastern Cape engaged in some agricultural activity, participation was much lower in Western Cape (2,5%) and Gauteng (4,0%). Of the households that were involved in agriculture, 10,1% cultivated farmland while 90,3% created backyard gardens.

Nationally, more than three-quarters (75,6%) of households that were involved in agriculture were involved in an attempt to secure an additional source of food. Provincially, 88,7% of households in Limpopo, and 78,8% of households in Mpumalanga were engaged in agricultural activities as a way to augment their existing sources of food.

By comparison, 41,4% of households in Western Cape practised agriculture as a leisure activity. Since agriculture is not so common in Gauteng, this finding might point to the fact that many households engage in agriculture as a last option.

Of the households that were engaged in agricultural production, 50,6% cultivated grains, and 53,3% grew fruit and vegetables. Livestock were produced by 48,7% of the country's households while 36,6% produced poultry.

Only 10,0% of the households involved in agriculture reported getting agricultural-related support from the government during the year preceding the survey.

The only provinces where significant support was provided for farming households were Eastern Cape (25,1%) and Northern Cape (17,3%). Nationally, slightly less than two percent (1,3%) of the households reported receiving training and 6,3% received dipping/livestock vaccination services.

According to Stats SA's GHS of 2018, the percentage of persons that experienced hunger decreased from 29,3% in 2002 to 11,3% in 2018. The percentage of households who were vulnerable to hunger reflects the same pattern as experienced by persons as it declined from 24,2% in 2002 to 9,7% in 2018, including a spell during which the percentage increased to 13,2% in 2008 before continuing its decline.

Improving food security and safety

Over the medium term, the allocation for the *Ilima/Letsema* projects grant will be used to promote the *Fetsa Tlala* food production initiative, which forms part of National Policy on Food and Nutrition Security.

By 2030, as per the NDP, government aims to ensure that one million hectares are used to produce crops including fruit and livestock, and provide superior breeding animals to targeted smallholder and subsistence farmers.

In 2019/20, government planned to finalise a register of farmers and agriculture statistics.

The project, which is conducted in collaboration with Stats SA, is aimed at improving the accuracy of agricultural statistics, including information on smallholder farmers across South Africa.

One of the outcomes of Operation Phakisa is to provide support to 435 000 subsistence farmers over the medium term. This entails facilitating access to markets for targeted smallholder farmers, repairing infrastructure damaged by floods, providing drought relief, and revitalising provincial agricultural colleges.

Enhancing primary animal healthcare services

To increase animal healthcare services, a targeted 150 veterinary graduates were expected to be deployed per year to rural areas over the medium term as part of their compulsory community service.

Informed by the agricultural policy action plan, animal improvement schemes are aimed at increasing the quality and yield of livestock.

Over the medium term, the department planned to monitor two animal improvement schemes that produce commodities in prioritised value chains: the *Kaonafatso ya Dikgomo* national animal recording and improvement scheme, which focuses on beef production; and the poultry production improvement scheme.

Role players

Credit and financial assistance

The six major sources of credit for farmers are banks (56%), agricultural cooperatives and agribusinesses (9%), the Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa (the Land Bank) (30%), private creditors (3%), and other creditors and financial institutions (2%).

Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa

The Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa operates in the primary agriculture and agribusiness sectors. As a development finance institution, its mandate is to address agricultural and rural development in South Africa.

In its ongoing effort to facilitate the entry of a generation of black agri-entrepreneurs into the sector, over the medium term, the Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa was expected to focus on growing its loan book and in doing so, create appropriate equity investment structures and opportunities, enable existing farmers to undertake transformational projects to grow their enterprises, increase funding for agro-processing, and continue to help small agribusinesses access supplier and enterprise development programmes to expand their operations.

Micro Agricultural Financial Institutions of (MAFISA)

MAFISA provides financial services to smallholder producers in the agriculture, forestry and fisheries sector. The objective of the scheme is to address the financial services needs of smallholder producers in the sector. Services provided through the scheme include production loans, facilitation of saving mobilization and capacity building for member owned financial institutions (intermediaries).

AgriBEE Fund

The AgriBEE Fund was established to provide support to businesses owned by black South Africans to advance the transformation agenda in the agriculture, forestry and fisheries sectors.

The objective of the fund are to promote entry and participation of black people in the entire value chain by providing funding for equity deals, to acquire interest in existing commercially viable and sustainable enterprises and advance enterprise development through agro-processing and value-adding activities.

Agri South Africa (Agri SA)

Agri SA promotes the development, profitability, stability and sustainability of agriculture in South Africa by means of its involvement and input on national and international policy, and the implementation thereof.

Agricultural Business Chamber (ABC)

The ABC is a voluntary, dynamic and influential association of agribusinesses. Its mission is to negotiate and position for a favourable agribusiness environment where members can perform competitively and profitably.

The ABC is the only organisation that serves the broader and common business interests of agribusinesses in South Africa. The chamber facilitates considerable networking opportunities so that South African agribusinesses can play an active and creative role within the local and international organised business environment and be closely involved in the legislative and policy environment on many fronts.

Transvaal Agricultural Union South Africa (TAU SA)

TAU SA renders services to its members in terms of property rights, economic issues, and safety and security.

National African Farmers' Union of South Africa (NAFU)

The aim of NAFU is to create a "home" for thousands of black farmers who had previously been excluded from the mainstream of agriculture. It focuses on advocacy and lobbies for access to critical resources such as land, credit, information, extension and other support services.

African Farmers' Association of South Africa (AFASA)

AFASA's aim is to promote competent and successful commercial South African farmers, and to ensure the long-term sustainability of the agricultural sector. Its values are to facilitate the development of African farmers to increase their meaningful participation in the agricultural sector.

Agricultural Research Council (ARC)

The primary mandate of the ARC, as the main agricultural research institution in South Africa, is to conduct research and development, and effect the transfer of technology to promote agriculture and industry, contribute to a better quality of life, and facilitate and ensure the conservation of natural resources.

Land Reform and Rural Development

Land plays a multifunctional role in societies which includes economic, environmental and settlement functions. Government has an ongoing commitment to build sustainable rural livelihoods.

The department is also mandated to initiate, facilitate, coordinate, catalyse and implement an integrated rural development programme in line with Chapter 6 of the NDP, which details a vision for building an inclusive rural economy; and Outcome 7 (comprehensive rural development and land reform) of government's 2014-2019 MTSF.

According to the Presidential Advisory Panel on Land Reform and Agriculture, a central component of inequality within land inequality is insecurity of tenure that results in economic exclusion of the majority of South Africans, particularly women and youth in rural and urban areas. By mid-2018, South Africa had over 60% citizens whose land/property rights were not recorded nor registered.

President Cyril Ramaphosa appointed the advisory panel in September 2018 to support the Inter-Ministerial Committee (IMC) on Land Reform chaired by Deputy President David Mabuza.

The panel was mandated to advise the IMC on a broad range of policy matters associated with land reform, including restitution, redistribution, tenure security and agricultural support.

The panel was expected to provide perspectives on land policy in the context of persisting land inequality,

unsatisfactory land and agrarian reform and uneven urban land development.

It was mandated to review, research and suggest models for government to implement a fair and equitable land reform process that redresses the injustices of the past, increases agricultural output, promotes economic growth and protects food security.

In July 2019, Cabinet approved the Final Report of the Presidential Advisory Panel on Land Reform and Agriculture.

On land expropriation without compensation (LEWC), the panel proposed a policy shift towards using the provisions of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996 to expropriate land without compensation.

The panel has offered a proposal for a constitutional amendment that clarifies that LEWC may be necessary in limited circumstances, but certainly in order to elevate the objectives of land reform.

Entities

- **Agricultural Land Holding Account (ALHA):** The ALHA was established in terms of the Provision of Land and Assistance Act of 1993, which gives legal effect to the proactive acquisition of land, where the Minister may, from money appropriated by Parliament for this purpose, acquire land for the purposes of this Act. Therefore the State will proactively target land and merge this with the demand or need for land.
- **KwaZulu-Natal Ingonyama Trust Board (ITB):** The ITB was established in terms of the provisions of the KwaZulu-Natal Ingonyama Trust Act of 1994. Its core business is to manage land for the material benefit and social well-being of the individual members of the tribes.
- **Registration of Deeds Trading Account:** The Registration of Deeds Trading Account is a trading entity established in terms of the Public Finance Management Act of 1999. It generates revenue by selling information and levying fees in accordance with the schedule of fees prescribed by regulation 84 of the Act; registers rights in land and thus provides security of title. It also maintains public registers of land.
- **Office of the Valuer General:** Supports land reform by providing impartial, efficient, just and equitable valuation services for all-land reform related matters in the country.

Agrarian and land tenure transformation

The One Household One Hectare initiative is the key mechanism used to promote agrarian transformation and provide landless people with access to land. The objective of the initiative is to support rural enterprises by creating smallholder producers, and facilitate the development of rural industries and the efficient movement of rural produce to markets.

Land restitution

Land restitution remains a key government priority. Following a Constitutional Court judgment in 2016 that ruled the Restitution of Land Rights Amendment Act of 2014 as invalid and contrary to the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996, the Restitution of Land Rights Amendment Bill was resubmitted to Parliament as a private members Bill in 2017. Once passed, the Act will make provision for the effective and constitutional redistribution of land.

In terms of the judgment, should all claims emanating from original lodgement be processed before the two-year period lapses, the commission may approach the Constitutional Court for a review of the judgment.

The Restitution of Land Rights Amendment Act of 2014 extends the deadline for land claims to June 2019. The amendment also criminalises false and fraudulent claims made by illegible people, which wastes taxpayers' money.

The Act also simplifies the procedure for the appointment of judges to the Land Claims Court, and the amendment of certain provisions aimed at promoting the effective implementation of the Restitution of Land Rights Act of 1994.

Extending the deadline for the lodging of claims was in line with the proposals of the NDP, the CRDP and other growth strategies intended to promote national reconciliation and social cohesion.

The Act sought to reopen the window for persons or communities dispossessed of their land due to past discriminatory laws and policies to lodge claims for their properties.

The CRLR is responsible for investigating and processing restitution claims. The CRLR also develops and coordinates restitution policies and oversees restitution court cases. The restitution programme is aimed at removing the settlement of land restitution claims under the Restitution of Land Rights Act of 1994.

The strategic objective of the CRLR is the restitution of rights in land or awards of alternative forms of equitable redress to claimants, within Medium Term Expenditure Framework budgetary allocation.

The CRLR seeks to provide equitable redress to victims of racially motivated land dispossession, in line with the provisions of the Restitution of Land Rights Act of 1994. It planned to increase the number of lodgement sites to 52 by 2019.

Expropriation of land without compensation

Government is constitutionally empowered to change the skewed land-ownership patterns while maintaining economic growth, food security and increased agricultural productions.

The Land Audit report on private land ownership by race, gender and nationality, released by the department in 2018, revealed that black South Africans own only 4% of the land in this country. This is a direct result of the historical injustices that resulted in skewed land ownership patterns along racial lines.

On 19 June 1913 thousands of black families were forcibly removed from their land following the promulgation of the 1913 Natives Land Act. Stripped of their land, homes, livelihoods and their dignity they were forced into homelands or relocated to poorly planned and serviced townships. Prior to this black people were also forcibly removed from their land by various discriminatory laws, policies and practices enacted by colonialist and imperialist governments.

In 1994 the democratic government identified the need for land and agrarian reform as part of national reconciliation. Land restitution as one of the three elements of land reform was aimed at providing redress to persons and communities dispossessed of their property rights by previous governments.

The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996 allows for restitution to any person or community dispossessed of land rights before 27 April 1994. The Constitution also guarantees the right to property, albeit with the power of expropriation, subject to compensation that is just and equitable.

Deeds registration

The 10 deeds registries are located in Pretoria, Cape Town, Johannesburg, Pietermaritzburg, Bloemfontein, Kimberley, King William's Town, Vryburg, Mthatha and Nelspruit.

These offices register deeds and documents relating to real rights in more than eight million registered land parcels consisting of township erven, farms, agricultural holdings, sectional title units and sectional title exclusive-use areas in terms of the Deeds Registries Act of 1937 and the Sectional Titles Act of 1986.

Animal and Veld Management Programme (AVMP)

The AVMP aims to address the unsustainable land use management practices in rural areas that have generally led to poor management of the veld and overstocking, causing low livestock production and deterioration of the natural resources (grazing, water, soil) and resulting in land degradation and deforestation.

In addressing these problems, the AVMP has three projects: Soil rehabilitation; Re-greening the environment and Decongesting the space.

The intended outcomes of the AVMP are food security; improved rural livelihoods; improved livestock and veld management; increased production, improved environmental management, and enabling rural communities to use land more sustainably.

Comprehensive Rural Development Programme

The DRDLR, in line with the NDP, adopted the CRDP and the Agrarian Transformation Strategy to address the challenges facing people living in the rural areas.

Rural Enterprise Industrial Development (REID)

REID aims to create an enabling institutional environment for vibrant and sustainable rural communities. The approach is based on social mobilisation of rural communities so that there can be ownership of rural development projects and programmes.

National Rural Youth Service Corps

The NARYSEC is a skills development initiative, which forms part of the CRDP's job-creation model.

The initiative recruits unemployed youth from rural areas between the ages of 18 and 25, who have passed Grade 12

or have higher qualifications, and equips them with business and entrepreneurial skills. The NARYSEC College in Thaba 'Nchu in the Free State is being used to provide skills training.

Job opportunities provided through the initiative include areas such as administration, agriculture, construction, education, engineering, health and safety, hospitality, renewable energy and transport.







OFFICIAL GUIDE TO

South Africa

2018/19

Communications

Department of Communications (DoC) and Digital Technologies (DCDT)

Following the reconfiguration of government departments in June 2019, the DoC was merged with the Department of Telecommunications and Postal Services (DTPS) to form the new DCDT.

The then DoC was spearheading the process of migrating broadcasting signals from analogue to digital. South Africa's national digital network coverage comprises DTT transmission coverage of 84% of the population with the remaining 16% to be covered by satellite network. DTT is a reliable and cost-efficient means to distribute linear TV content and has many advantages over the analogue broadcasting system. One of its major advantages for communities is that it clears the analogue spectrum for the delivery of broadband mobile Internet and Wi-fi services.

To view digital TV signals on an ordinary analogue TV set, consumers will need a set-top box (STB). Government will provide about five million poor TV-owning households with free STBs. Once the migration is complete, high definition TV telecast facilities would be available, along with expanded community, FM and satellite radio services to the entire population.

During the 2017/18 financial year, the then DoC developed the *White Paper on Audio-Visual and Digital Content Policy for South Africa*, which provides enabling mechanisms to facilitate ownership of the new audio-visual digital content value chain by previously disadvantaged communities and small, medium and micro enterprises.

Fourth Industrial Revolution (4IR)

In 2018, Communications (and Digital Technologies) Minister Stella Ndabeni-Abrahams announced the "Building a Capable 4IR Army" capacity development programme to ensure that communities are equipped to take advantage of new digital technologies, unlock future jobs and drive competitiveness. One million young people will be trained in data science and related skills by 2030.

By mid-2019, through a partnership with the Media, Information and Communication Technologies Sector Education and Training Authority, 1 000 young people were being trained on Data Science, Digital Content Production, 3D Printing, Cybersecurity, Drone Piloting, Software Development and Cloud Computing.

Though various support programmes such as the South Africa Research Chairs initiative and other targeted human capital development initiatives, the Department of Science and Innovation is building essential capability in all technology areas underpinning the 4IR.

These include programmes in data science and analytics, blockchain and distributed ledger technologies, additive manufacturing, artificial intelligence, robotics, quantum technologies.

Since access to broadband and connectivity is a lever to socio-economic inclusion and an absolute necessity, government aims to connect the 22 million unconnected people in the country through the Broadband Connectivity initiative.

In April 2019, President Cyril Ramaphosa established the 31-member Presidential Commission on the 4IR. The commission is mandated to advise government on 4IR policies, develop a framework for implementation of a multisectoral 4IR strategy; and coordinate, monitor and evaluate multisectoral initiatives that will position South Africa as a globally competitive player in 4IR.

Film and Publication Board

The FPB regulates and controls the creation, production, possession, exhibition and distribution of certain films, interactive computer games and publications in terms of the Films and Publications Act of 1996. The board is also responsible for monitoring age restricted business premises for compliance with their licence and registration terms.

The Act recognises the right of adults to freedom of expression, except with respect to child pornography, and requires the board to intervene where there is a risk of harm to children.

The board spearheads a national anti-child-pornography campaign to educate learners about ways to avoid victimisation. Child-pornography websites can be reported by calling the board's toll-free number 0800 148 148.

This system will also allow distributors to renew their licences.

Independent Communications Authority of South Africa (ICASA)

ICASA was established by the ICASA Act of 2000 to regulate the South African communications, broadcasting and postal services sectors. The regulator's mandate is defined in the Electronic Communications Act of 2005 as licensing and regulating electronic communications and broadcasting services, and in the Postal Services Act of 1998 as regulating the postal services sector.

Enabling legislation also empowers the regulator to monitor licensee compliance with licence terms and conditions, develop regulations for the three sectors, plan and manage the radio frequency spectrum, and protect consumers in relation to these services.

South African Broadcasting Corporation

The SABC is one of the key institutional pillars of our democracy, delivering essential content to millions of South Africans on multiple platforms. To this end, the SABC contributes to the strengthening of democracy by promoting nation-building and social cohesion, through compelling and accessible local content programmes. The SABC manages 18 radio stations and three television channels.

Department of Telecommunications and Postal Services

Following the reconfiguration of some government departments in June 2019, the DTPS was merged with the DoC to form the new DCDT.

The then DTPS was mandated to develop Information and Communications Technology (ICT) policies and to ensure the development of robust, reliable, secure and affordable ICT infrastructure. The department also contributes to building an ICT skills base in the country to ensure equitable prosperity and global competitiveness.

The NDP envisages that by 2030, the ICT sector will underpin the development of a dynamic and connected information society, and a vibrant knowledge economy that is inclusive and prosperous. Drawing from this vision, the contributes to Outcome 6 (an efficient, competitive and responsive economic infrastructure network) of government's 2014-2019 MTSF by ensuring that ICT infrastructure and services are accessible, affordable, robust, reliable and secure.

The six state-owned enterprises under the DCDT are the South African Post Office (SAPO), Sentech; National Electronic Media Institute of South Africa (NEMISA); Universal Service and Access Agency of South Africa (USAASA); .za. Domain Name Authority (ZADNA); Universal Service and Access Fund (USAF); Broadband Infraco and SITA.

South African Post Office

The SAPO provides postal and related services to the public. Post offices offer South Africans a convenient place to accept and deliver cash-on-delivery items, which is a very important service in rural communities where some people shop from catalogues.

In addition, more than a million South Africans walk through the doors of post offices near where they live to access their social grants.

Post offices also offer services that include enabling South Africans to renew their vehicle registration, and pay their municipal accounts and TV licences.

The Philatelic Services of the SAPO is responsible for producing South Africa's postage stamps and other stamp-related products. Over the years, many of them have become valuable collector's items.

The Postbank caters for the banking needs of the unbanked majority, thus facilitating their inclusion into the economic mainstream and expanding the existing range of banking services.

Sentech

Sentech is mandated to provide common carrier broadcasting signal distribution services to licensed broadcasters in South Africa. The company's mandate has since been expanded to provide international voice services and common carrier multimedia services in accordance with government's imperative to liberalise the telecommunications sector.

National Electronic Media Institute of South Africa

NEMISA offers national certificates and short courses in the areas of television production, animation and radio production. The institute's programmes are structured to enhance the market readiness of students in a wide range of broadcasting disciplines.

Universal Service and Access Agency of South Africa

The sole mandate of USAASA is to promote universal service and access to electronic communications services, electronic communications network services and broadcasting services.

.za.Domain Name Authority

ZADNA is a non-profit company that manages and regulates the .za namespace. It is accountable to the DTSPS, but does not receive government funding.

Universal Service and Access Fund

The USAF's sole mandate is to make payments for subsidies towards the provision of ICT equipment and services, and construct and extend electronic communication and broadcasting networks for needy persons in underserved areas. The fund is managed by USAASA and is financed by contributions from all telecommunications licensees except community broadcasting service licensees.

Broadband Infraco

Broadband Infraco is intended to improve market efficiency in the long distance connectivity segment by increasing available long distance network infrastructure. It will also avail capacity to stimulate private sector innovation in telecommunications services and content offerings.

Broadband Infraco provides long distance national and international connectivity to licensed private sector partners, licence-exempt projects of national importance and to previously underserved areas.

State Information Technology Agency

SITA consolidates and coordinates the State's information technology (IT) resources in order to achieve cost savings through scale, increase delivery capabilities and enhance interoperability.

SITA is committed to leveraging IT as a strategic resource for government, managing the IT procurement and delivery process to ensure that government gets value for money. The agency also uses IT to support the delivery of e-Government services to all citizens.

It serves as the IT business for the largest employer and consumer of IT products and services in South Africa – the South African Government.

Communication platforms

Radio

The SABC's national radio network of 18 radio stations command a 70.5% share of the market, translating to over 28 million South Africans. The top five most listened to radio stations in the country are Ukhozi FM, Umhlobo Wenene FM, Lesedi FM, Thobela FM and Metro FM.

Commercial radio stations

Commercial radio stations in South Africa include:

- Algoa FM
- Classic FM
- Kaya FM
- YFM
- 94.7 Highveld Stereo
- 702 Talk Radio
- Metro FM
- 5FM
- Good Hope FM
- Jacaranda 94.2
- OFM
- East Coast Radio
- 567 Cape Talk
- Radio 2000
- Capricorn FM
- Power FM
- Radio KFM.

Stations such as Jacaranda 94.2, Highveld Stereo, Radio Oranje, Radio Algoa and East Coast Radio were initially SABC stations, but were sold to private owners to diversify radio ownership in South Africa as part of the transformation of the public broadcaster. Many of South Africa's radio stations are available online.

Television

TV remains the medium of choice for most South Africans. According to Statistics South Africa's (Stats SA) General Household Survey (GHS) of 2018, more than four-fifths of households in the country owned TV sets (82,2%) in 2018.

SABC TV consists of three free-to air (FTA) channels namely, SABC1, SABC2 and SABC3 as well as two channels carried on a subscription digital satellite network, SABC Encore and the 24-hour news channel (Channel 404), SABC

News. SABC News offers breaking news and continuous news updates in 51 African countries as it aspires to be a Pan-African channel.

SABC1, SABC2 and SABC3 attract on average 28 million South African viewers a month, as they deliver top quality local and international content. SABC Encore, a retro channel which showcases programming from the 1980s and 1990s, is an integral part of the SABC's strategy moving into a multi-channel environment.

Community TV

Soweto TV was the first community TV station to obtain a seven-year broadcasting licence from ICASA. There are five community TV stations operational in Soweto, Cape Town, Tshwane, Empangeni and Nelson Mandela Bay.

FTA TV

e.tv, which was launched in 1998, is South Africa's first private FTA TV channel. It is the largest English-medium channel in the country and the second largest overall. e.tv also has a pan-African presence through e.tv Africa, which is distributed on the DStv Africa bouquet and by local affiliates in African countries. Kwesé Free TV, the second entry in the FTA market, obtained its broadcast licence in 2019.

Satellite broadcasting

eNews Channel Africa (eNCA) is South Africa's first and most watched independent 24-hour TV news channel on the DStv platform (Channel 403).

The 24-hour news service is broadcast live in the UK to over 10,5 million subscribers on the Sky digital satellite platform.

eNCA provides live news bulletins to nearly three million South African viewers each night on e.tv (in English, isiZulu and Sesotho) and to more than 200 000 Afrikaans viewers on kykNET.

The SABC also has its own 24-hour news channel on DStv (Channel 404). Newzroom Afrika, the new 24-hour TV news station on DStv channel 405 which replaced ANN7, was launched in May 2019.

Internet

Statistics South Africa's (Stats SA) General Household Survey (GHS) of 2018 shows that about 64,7% of South

African households had at least one member who had access to, or used the Internet either at home, work, place of study or Internet cafés.

Access to the Internet using all available means was highest in Gauteng (74,6%), Western Cape (72,4%) and Mpumalanga (70,2%), and lowest in Limpopo (46,2%) and Eastern Cape (55,3%).

Marginally over one-tenth (10,4%) of South African households had access to the Internet at home. Access to the Internet at home was highest among households in Western Cape (25,8%) and Gauteng (16,7%), and lowest in Limpopo (1,7%) and North West (3,0%).

Household access to the Internet at home was highest in Western Cape (25,8%) and Gauteng (16,7%) and lowest in Limpopo (1,7%). While 17,3% of households in metropolitan areas had access to the Internet at home, this was true for only 1,7% of rural households in general and less than one per cent of rural households in North West (0,8%) and Limpopo (0,6%).

Households were generally more likely to have access to the Internet at work than at home or at Internet cafés or at educational institutions. Households in Gauteng and Western Cape were most likely to access the Internet at work while those in Limpopo were least likely to do so.

Using mobile devices to access the Internet includes access on cellular telephones or using mobile access devices such as 3G cards. Mobile access to the Internet has made it much more accessible to households in rural areas.

Nationally, Internet access using mobile devices (60,1%) was much more common than access at home (10,4%), at work (16,2%) and elsewhere (10,1%). Although the use of mobile Internet access devices in rural areas (45,0%) still lags behind its use in metros (67,5%) and urban areas (63,7%), it is much more common in rural areas than any of the alternative methods.

According to *Media Update*, an online publication dedicated to reporting on, among others, the latest news and information relevant to the South African (and African) advertising and marketing; media and entertainment; and social media industries, the average South African spends eight hours and 25 minutes a day on the Internet. This is higher than the global average of six hours and 41 minutes.

In 2019, over 31 million people in South Africa were using the Internet (54% of the population), up from the 30.8 million people in 2018.

Social media

The online *Media Update* publication states that 40% people in South Africa use social media (23 million people), below the global average of 45% but five million more people than in 2018.

On average, South Africans spend two hours and 48 minutes on social media, above the global average of two hours and 16 minutes. The publication further states that South Africans have an average of eight social media accounts, with WhatsApp being the most popular messaging app in the country.

According to *Media Update*, the reasons why people join social media include the following:

- **40%:** to stay up-to-date with current events and news;
- **39%:** to stay in touch with what friends are doing;
- **38%:** to find funny or entertaining content;
- **37%:** to fill up spare time;
- **33%:** general networking of other people;
- **32%:** to share photos and video with others;
- **31%:** to research/find products to buy; and
- **30%:** because a lot of friends use social media.

Cybercrime and cybersecurity

Identity fraud, stalking, online child pornography and terrorism have become daily occurrences that threaten communities' ability to enjoy the benefits of new technologies.

A 2018 study conducted by the University of the Western Cape confirmed that, among those studied, South Africa is one of the 10 most vulnerable countries on the globe at risk to cyber-attacks.

Government continues to improve the implementation of a coordinated, capacitated and resourced state-led national response and the implementation of the National Cybersecurity Policy Framework as an effort to fight cybercrime and improve the country's global rating on Cyber Security.

Telecommunications

South Africa has five major mobile operators, namely CellC, MTN, Vodacom, Telkom Mobile and Virgin Mobile.

According to Stats SA's GHS of 2018, nationally, only 3,4% of households did not have access to either landlines or cellular phones. Households without access to these communication media were most common in Northern Cape (10,3%) and Eastern Cape (7,6%). Only 0,1% of South African households used only landlines.

By comparison, 89,5% of South African households exclusively use cellular phones. The exclusive use of cellular phones was most common in Mpumalanga (96,5%), Limpopo (94,5%), North West (92,1%) and Gauteng (90,7%).

Households that had higher usage of both cellular phones and landlines were most common in the more prosperous provinces, namely Western Cape (18,4%) and Gauteng (7,8%).

The media

South Africa has a vibrant and independent media, with print, broadcast and online offerings.

Print Newspapers

Most South African newspapers and magazines are organised into several major publishing houses. These include Media24 (part of Naspers, the largest media group in Africa), the Irish-based Independent News & Media (Pty) Ltd group, Caxton Publishers & Printers Ltd and Tiso Blackstar Group. Other important media players include M&G Media Ltd; the Natal Witness Printing & Publishing Company (Pty) Ltd; Primedia Publishing Ltd; Highbury Media; Ramsay Media, and Kagiso Media.

Magazines

According to figures released by the Audit Bureau of Circulations of South Africa, there has been a steady decline in magazine circulation in South Africa over the past months, with only a handful of commercial magazines achieving a steady increase in circulation.

Media organisations and role players

The **Print and Digital Media South Africa (PDMSA)** is an umbrella body incorporating print and digital media.

By mid-2019, the PDMSA membership included more than 700 newspaper and magazine titles that cater for four different language groups.

The members include Tiso Blackstar Group; Caxton and CTP; Independent Newspapers; Media24; *Mail & Guardian*, and the Association of Independent Publishers.

The **South African National Editors' Forum** promotes excellence in journalism through fighting for media freedom, writing policy submissions, research, education and training programmes.

The **Forum of Journalists for Transformation** addresses issues that directly affect its members.

The **Press Council**, the **Press Ombud** and the **Appeals Panel** are an independent co-regulatory mechanism set up by the print and online media to provide impartial, expeditious and cost-effective adjudication to settle disputes between newspapers, magazines and online publications, on the one hand, and members of the public, on the other, over the editorial content of publications.

The **Freedom of Expression Institute (FXI)** was formed to defend freedom of expression, to oppose censorship, to promote access to information and knowledge, and to promote media diversity. The FXI is the leading organisation on issues of freedom of expression and access to information as enshrined in the Bill of Rights in Section 16 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996.

The **Forum of Community Journalists** is an independent, non-profit, non-racial and voluntary organisation striving to promote and express the interests of all journalists employed on a permanent or freelance basis at regional community newspapers, magazines and online community publications in South Africa.

The **Broadcasting Complaints Commission of South Africa** serves as a voluntary watchdog to adjudicate complaints from the public about programmes flighted by members who subscribe to its code of conduct.

Media Monitoring Africa is a non-profit organisation that acts in a watchdog role to promote ethical and fair journalism that supports human rights.

The **National Community Radio Forum** lobbies for the airwaves in South Africa to be diversified, and for a dynamic broadcasting environment through the establishment of community radio stations.

Other press organisations operating in the country are the Foreign Correspondents' Association of Southern Africa; Printing Industries Federation of South Africa; South African Typographical Union; Specialist Press Association; South African Guild of Motoring Journalists; Professional Photographers of South Africa; Media Institute of Southern Africa; Publishers' Association of South Africa, and various press clubs in major centres.

News agencies

Local and international news agencies based in South Africa include:

- African News Agency
- Reuters
- Agence France-Presse
- Associated Press
- Deutsche Presse Agentur
- United Press International.

Media awards

Some of South Africa's media awards include the:

- Mondi Shanduka Newspaper Awards
- Vodacom Journalist of the Year Awards
- South African Breweries (SAB) Environmental Media and Environmentalist of the Year Awards
- SAB Sports Media Awards
- Sanlam Financial Journalist of the Year Award
- CNN MultiChoice African Journalist Awards
- Discovery Health Journalism Awards
- Nat Nakasa Award
- Local Media Excellence Awards
- Liberty Radio Awards
- Isu Elihle Awards
- Standard Bank Sikuvile Awards
- MDDA/Sanlam Local Media Awards
- New Generation Social & Digital Media Awards.



Marketing and advertising awards

South Africa has a vibrant and dynamic marketing and advertising industry. Some of the awards include:

- Loeries
- Assegai Awards
- Creative Circle Annual Awards
- APEX Awards.





OFFICIAL GUIDE TO
South Africa
2018/19

**Economy and
Finance**

The central economic policy goal of the South African Government is to accelerate inclusive growth and create jobs.

Its main fiscal objective is to ensure sustainable finances by containing the budget deficit and stabilising public debt.

Economic growth is projected to improve moderately from 1,5% in 2019 to 2,1% in 2021. In the longer term, South Africa requires higher and more inclusive growth to address unemployment and poverty.

Government is implementing growth-enhancing reforms in line with President Cyril Ramaphosa's Economic Stimulus and Recovery Plan, which aims to, among other things, ignite economic activity, restore investor confidence, prevent further job losses and create much-needed jobs.

Additional steps to strengthen policy certainty, improve the effectiveness of infrastructure spending and rebuild public institutions will encourage private-sector investment and bolster confidence.

Chapter 3 of the country's socio-economic roadmap, the National Development Plan (NDP), sets out a vision for South Africa to build an inclusive economy that advances social equality.

This vision is expressed in terms of Outcome 4 (decent employment through inclusive growth), Outcome 8 (sustainable human settlements and improved quality of household life), Outcome 9 (responsive, accountable, effective and efficient developmental local government) and Outcome 12 (an efficient, effective and development-oriented public service) of government's 2014-2019 Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF), which are closely aligned with the work of National Treasury.

The NDP recognises that faster, broad-based growth is needed to transform the economy, create jobs, and reduce poverty and inequality by 2030. The department's continual focus remains on:

- reviewing tax policy and strengthening regulation in the financial sector;
- managing future spending growth and fiscal risk;
- managing government's assets and liabilities;
- making government procurement more efficient;
- strengthening government financial management;
- facilitating regional and international cooperation;
- supporting sustainable employment, and
- supporting infrastructure development and economically integrated cities and communities.

National Treasury

National Treasury's legislative mandate is based on section 216(1) of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996, which calls for the establishment of a national treasury to ensure transparency, accountability and sound financial controls in the management of the country's public finances.

This role is further elaborated in the Public Finance Management Act (PFMA) of 1999. The department is mandated to:

- promote national government's fiscal policy and the coordination of macroeconomic policy
- ensure the stability and soundness of the financial system and financial services
- coordinate intergovernmental financial and fiscal relations
- manage the budget preparation process
- enforce transparency and effective management of national revenue and expenditure, assets and liabilities, public entities, and constitutional institutions.

The NDP recognises that faster, broad-based growth is needed to transform the economy, create jobs, and reduce poverty and inequality in South Africa. Outcome 4 (decent employment through inclusive economic growth) of government's 2014-2019 MTSF gives expression to this vision, with National Treasury's work contributing to its realisation.

The total allocation to National Treasury in 2019/20 financial year is R30.8 billion. This allocation allows the department to conduct research on the economy together with its partners in and outside of government, and develop policies to maintain fiscal stability and promote growth.

This allocation includes transfers to the South African Revenue Service (SARS), Financial Intelligence Centre (FIC), State Security Agency and commitments to multilateral finance institutions. It also includes contributions to civil and military pensions. In rebuilding institutions, is expected to entrench institutional culture of professionalism, transparency, accountability and sustainability. These values are critical for building of a developmental state.

National Treasury will continue developing and updating the In-Year Monitoring system to monitor the spending by all national and provincial departments monthly. In line with Section 32 of the PFMA of 1999, the spending numbers of all departments will be published quarterly.

During the 2019/20 financial year, National Treasury was expected to table a new Procurement Bill as a single overarching legislation for public procurement in the country.

It was expected to introduce a procurement data transparency portal where all procurement data would be easily accessible for the monitoring of government projects.

Entities under National Treasury

National Treasury is responsible for the following entities:

- The **Development Bank of Southern Africa** is a development finance institution with the primary purpose of promoting economic development and growth. The bank also promotes human resources development and building institutional capacity by mobilising financial and other resources from the national and international private and public sectors for sustainable development projects and programmes in South Africa and regions in the rest of Southern Africa.
- The **Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa's** mandate, as a development finance institution, is to address agricultural and rural development in South Africa.
- **SARS** is mandated to collect all revenues due to the state and administer trade to support government in meeting its key growth developmental objectives. This involves facilitating legitimate trade, protecting South African ports of entry, and eliminating illegal trade and tax evasion. The organisation's purpose is to contribute to the socio-economic development of the country by collecting the resources needed by government to meet its policy and delivery priorities.
- The **Accounting Standards Board** develops uniform standards of generally recognised accounting practice for all spheres of government. It also promotes transparency in and the effective management of revenue, expenditure, assets and liabilities of the entities to which the standards apply.
- The **Cooperative Banks Development Agency's** mandate is to provide for the registration and supervision of deposit-taking financial services cooperatives, and savings and credit cooperatives, collectively referred to as cooperative financial institutions. The agency also facilitates, promotes and funds the education and training of these institutions.

- The **Financial and Fiscal Commission's** legislative mandate is to advise the relevant legislative authorities on the financial and fiscal requirements for the national, provincial and local spheres of government.
- The **FIC's** mandate is, among other things, to identify the proceeds of unlawful activities, combat money-laundering activities, combat the financing of terrorist and related activities, exchange information with law-enforcement and other local and international agencies.
- The **Financial Services Board** is an independent institution established by statute to oversee the South African non-banking financial services industry in the public interest.
- The **Government Pensions Administration Agency** provides pensions administration services to the Government Employees Pension Fund (GEPF).
- The **Government Technical Advisory Centre** is mandated to assist organs of state in building their capacity for efficient, effective and transparent financial management.
- The **Independent Regulatory Board for Auditors** develops and maintains auditing and ethical standards that are internationally comparable, provides an appropriate framework for the education and training of properly qualified auditors, inspects and reviews the work of registered auditors, and investigates and takes appropriate action against registered auditors who do not comply with standards and are guilty of improper conduct.
- The **Office of the Ombud for Financial Services Providers** is mandated to consider and dispose of complaints against financial services providers, primarily intermediaries selling investment products.
- The **Office of the Pension Funds Adjudicator** investigates and determines complaints lodged in terms of the Pension Funds Act of 1956. The office ensures a procedurally fair, economical and expeditious resolution of complaints in terms of the Act.
- The **Public Investment Corporation** is one of the largest investment managers in Africa, managing more than R2 trillion worth of assets in a well-diversified portfolio of investment. It manages the assets of the GEPF, social security funds and other smaller funds.
- The **South African Airways** is South Africa's national air carrier which operates a full service network in the international, regional and domestic markets.

- The **South African Special Risks Insurance Association** is mandated to support the insurance industry by providing cover for special risks such as riots, strikes, political unrest, terrorist attacks, civil commotion, public disorder and labour disturbances.

South African Reserve Bank (SARB)

The primary purpose of the SARB is to achieve and maintain price stability in the interest of balanced and sustainable economic growth in South Africa. Together with other institutions, it also plays a pivotal role in ensuring financial stability.

The primary function of the SARB, as the country's central bank, is to protect the value of South Africa's currency. In discharging this role, it takes responsibility for:

- ensuring that the South African money, banking and financial system as a whole is sound, meets the requirements of the community and keeps abreast of international developments
- assisting the South African Government, as well as other members of the economic community of southern Africa, with data relevant to the formulation and implementation of macroeconomic policy;
- informing the South African community and all stakeholders abroad about monetary policy and the South African economic situation.

The SARB is governed by the SARB Act of 1989, as amended. It has more than 600 shareholders.

Tax administration

National Treasury is responsible for advising the Minister of Finance on tax policy issues. As part of this role, National Treasury must design tax instruments that can optimally fulfil a revenue-raising function. These tax instruments must be aligned to the goals of government's economic and social policy. These instruments are then administered by SARS.

A single, modern framework for the common administrative provisions of various tax Acts administered by SARS, excluding Customs, was established by the Tax Administration Act of 2011, which commenced on 1 October 2012. The Act simplifies and provides greater coherence in South African tax administration law.

It eliminates duplication, removes redundant requirements, and aligns disparate requirements that previously existed in different tax Acts administered by SARS.

The Act provides for common procedures across the various tax Acts, and strives for an appropriate balance between the rights and obligations of SARS and the rights and obligations of taxpayers in a transparent relationship.

Office of the Tax Ombud

The Office of the Tax Ombud is intended to provide taxpayers with an impartial and low-cost mechanism to address service, procedural or administrative difficulties that taxpayers have not been able to resolve through SARS's complaints management channels.

South African tax system

South Africa has a residence-based income tax system. Residents are, subject to certain exclusions, taxed on their worldwide income, irrespective of where their income was earned. Non-residents are taxed on their income from a South African source, subject to relief under Double Taxation Agreements (DTAs). Foreign taxes are credited against South African tax payable on foreign income.

Taxes on income and profits

Personal Income Tax (PIT), Company Income Tax (CIT) and Value-added Tax (VAT) in aggregate remain the largest source of tax revenue and comprise about 80.7% of total tax revenue collections.

This is the largest category of tax revenue and accounted for 58.5% of total tax revenue in 2017/18. This category comprises taxes on persons and Individuals; taxes on companies ((both inclusive of Capital Gains Tax and withholding tax on royalties)); interest on overdue income tax; Dividends Tax (DT) and withholding tax on interest.

Personal Income Tax

PIT is a tax levied on the taxable income of individuals and trusts, with PIT in 2017/18 accounting for more than 38.1% of total revenue. It is determined for a specific year of assessment. Taxable capital gains form part of taxable income.

The main contributors to PIT are employment income from salary earners and income generated from sole-proprietor activities. The tax rates applicable to PIT-related taxable income are progressive, marginal rates ranging from 18% to 45% since 2017/18.

As a means of collecting PIT from salary and wage income, a mechanism known as Pay-As-You-Earn is in operation that enables employers to withhold tax due to SARS from employees and pay this over to SARS monthly and reconciled biannually.

Company Income Tax

CIT is a tax levied on the taxable income of companies and close corporations. After PIT and VAT, CIT has been the largest contributor to total tax revenue for the past decade. Although the current headline CIT rate is 28%, some sectors of the economy have different effective tax rates due to sector-specific tax dispensations and deductions.

Exceptions to the rule are the lower, progressive tax rates that apply to small business corporations and micro-enterprises, as well as the reduced rate that applies to companies operating in designated special economic zones.

Dividends Tax

DT is a final tax at a rate of 20% on dividends paid by resident companies and by non-resident companies in respect of shares listed on the JSE. Dividends are tax exempt if the beneficial owner of the dividend is a South African company, retirement fund or other exempt person.

Non-resident beneficial owners of dividends may benefit from reduced tax rates in limited circumstances. The tax is to be withheld by companies paying the taxable dividends or by regulated intermediaries in the case of dividends on listed shares. The tax on dividends in kind (other than in cash) is payable and is borne by the company that declares and pays the dividend.

Taxes on payroll and workforce

Taxes on payroll and workforce comprise the Skills Development Levy (SDL) and Unemployment Insurance Fund contributions. SDL is a compulsory levy intended to fund training costs incurred by employers.

Skills Development Levy

Affected employers contribute to a Skills Development Fund that is used for employee training and skills development.

This SDL is payable by employers at a rate of 1% of the total remuneration paid to employees.

Employers paying annual remuneration of less than R500 000 are exempt from the payment of this levy.

Unemployment Insurance Fund (UIF)

The UIF insures employees against the loss of earnings due to termination of employment, illness or maternity leave. The contribution to the UIF is shared equally by affected employers and employees at a rate of 1% of remuneration each. The employee share of 1% is withheld by the employer and paid monthly to SARS, together with the employer share of 1%.

Taxes on property

Taxes on property comprise Donations tax, Estate Duty, Securities Transfer Tax (STT) and transfer duties.

Donations tax

Donations tax is levied at a rate of 20% and at 25% on the value of cumulative donations exceeding R30 million effective from 1 March 2018. An annual exemption of R100 000 is available to natural persons.

Estate duty

Estate duty is levied at a flat rate of 20% and at 25% on the dutiable amount of the deceased estate that exceeds R30 million from 1 March 2018. Specific deductions and abatements are allowed from the total value of the estate.

Securities Transfer Tax

STT is levied at a rate of 0,25% on the transfer of listed or unlisted securities. Securities consist of shares in companies or members' interests in close corporations.

Transfer duty

Transfer duty is the largest source of revenue in this category. It is levied on the acquisition of property at progressive rates from 0% to 13% for all persons including companies, close corporations and trusts. The marginal rate of 13% applies to the portion of the value of property exceeding R10 million.

Domestic taxes on goods and services

Domestic taxes on goods and services comprise VAT, specific excise duties, ad valorem excise duties, fuel levy, Road Accident Fund (RAF) levy, environmental levies and health

promotion levy. VAT is the largest source of revenue in this category with a share of 71,8% in 2017/18.

Value-added Tax

VAT is levied at a rate of 15% on goods and services with some exemptions and zero-ratings, and is also levied on the importation of goods and services into South Africa. The quoted or displayed price of goods and services must be VAT-inclusive.

A person who supplies goods or services is liable to register for VAT, if the supplies are more than R1 million in a 12-month period, or when there is a reasonable expectation that the income will exceed this amount. A person can also register voluntarily for VAT, if the supply of goods or services for 12 months exceeded R50 000.

Fuel taxes

The fuel levy is imposed on petrol and diesel (including biodiesel) manufactured in or imported into South Africa. The fuel levy is not earmarked, but it implicitly increases the cost of road transport to encourage more efficient and sustainable road use.

The increased fuel levy is R3.52/litre for petrol and R3.37/litre for diesel from 3 April 2019. The RAF levy is imposed on petrol and diesel manufactured in or imported into South Africa. The RAF levy funds the RAF's motor vehicle accident insurance scheme. The increased RAF levy is R1.98/litre for both petrol and diesel from 3 April 2019.

Environmental levies

The South African Government has responded to the serious global challenge of environmental pollution and climate change by introducing several environmental taxes that are intended to modify behaviour of the country's citizens for sustainable development of the economy.

International air passenger departure tax

The tax imposed on international air travel was introduced in November 2000 and was last increased on 1 October 2011. Passengers departing on flights to Botswana, Lesotho, Namibia and Eswatini are paying a departure tax of R100 per passenger while passengers on other international flights are paying R190 per passenger.

Plastic bag levy

The plastic bag levy was introduced to reduce litter and encourage plastic bag reuse. It was increased to 12 cents per bag as from 1 April 2018.

Electricity generation levy

The electricity generation levy was introduced to encourage sustainable electricity generation and use. The levy is applied to electricity generated from non-renewable sources and was increased in 2012 to 3,5 cents per kWh.

Incandescent bulb levy

This levy was introduced to promote energy efficiency by discouraging the use of incandescent light bulbs. The levy increased to R8 a bulb on 1 April 2018.

CO2 motor vehicle emissions levy

The CO2 motor vehicle emissions levy on passenger and double-cab vehicles was introduced to encourage the manufacture and purchase of more energy efficient motor vehicles. The rate was last increased on 1 April 2018 to R110 for every gram above 120gCO₂/km for passenger vehicles and R150 for every gram above 175gCO₂/km for double cab vehicles.

Tyre levy

The tyre levy on new pneumatic tyres was introduced to encourage efficient tyre use. Although the tyre levy is not earmarked, it indirectly supports the responsible recycling of obsolete tyres. The levy was implemented on 1 February 2017 at a rate of R2,30/kg.

Health promotion levy

The sugary beverages levy took effect on 1 April 2018 at a rate of 2,1 cent/gram of the sugar content that exceeds 4g/100 ml. The levy applies to specific sugary drinks and concentrates used in the manufacture of sugary drinks to combat obesity and promote healthier consumer beverage choices.

Diamond levy

A diamond export levy on unpolished diamonds exported from South Africa was introduced, effective from 1 November 2008 at a rate of 5% of the value of such diamonds.

Trade agreements

SARS administers a number of trade agreements or protocols or other parts or provisions thereof, and other international instruments, in terms of the Act, which are enacted into law when published by notice in the *Government Gazette*. The full texts of these types of agreements are contained in Schedule No. 10 to the Act and contain the following:

- Treaty of the Southern African Development Community (SADC) and Protocols concluded under the provisions of Article 22 of the Treaty (SADC Treaty and Protocols).
- Agreement between the Government of the Republic of South Africa and the Government of the United States of America regarding Mutual Assistance between their Customs Administrations.
- Southern African Customs Agreement between the governments of the Republic of Botswana, the Kingdom of Lesotho, the Republic of Namibia, South Africa and the Kingdom of Eswatini.
- Memorandum of Understanding between the Government of the Republic of South Africa and the Government of the People's Republic of China (PRC) on promoting Bilateral Trade and Economic Cooperation.
- Free Trade Agreement between the EFTA States and the SACU States.
- Common Market of the South (Mercosur) comprising Argentina, Brazil, Paraguay and Uruguay, and the South African Customs Union (SACU) comprising of Botswana, Lesotho, Namibia, South Africa and Eswatini which was implemented on 1 April 2016 (Mercosur-SACU)
- Economic Partnership Agreement between the SADC Economic Partnership Agreement states, of the one part, and the European Union and its member states of the other part which was implemented on 10 October 2016 (SADC – EPA).

In terms of the above-mentioned agreements preferential rates as contained in the rate of duty columns in Part 1 of Schedule No. 1 may apply in each case.

Southern African Customs Union

SACU consists of Botswana, Lesotho, Namibia, South Africa and Eswatini. The SACU Secretariat is located in Windhoek, Namibia. SACU was established in 1910, making it the world's oldest Customs Union.

Negotiations to reform the 1969 Agreement started in 1994, and a new agreement was signed in 2002. The member states form a single customs territory in which tariffs and other barriers are eliminated on substantially all the trade between the member states for products originating in these countries; and there is a common external tariff that applies to non-members of SACU.

Excise duties

Excise duties are levied on certain locally manufactured goods and their imported equivalents. Specific excise duties are levied on tobacco and liquor products. Ad valorem excise duties are levied on products such as motor vehicles, cellular telephones, electronics and cosmetics.

Customs duty

Customs duties are imposed by the Customs and Excise Act of 1964. Ordinary customs duty is a tax levied on imported goods and is usually calculated on the value of goods imported and collected by the customs unit within SARS.

Customs duty rates in Part 1 of Schedule No. 1 and trade remedies relating to the importation of goods such as anti-dumping, countervailing and safeguard duty are set out in Schedule No. 2 of the Schedules to the Act and are determined through trade policy in terms of the International Trade Administration Act of 2002 administered by the International Trade Administration Commission.

Other taxes

Rates on property

Property-related taxes include municipal rates and charges for refuse and sewerage, which are collected by municipalities.

Payment channels

The majority of taxpayers are now using electronic payment platforms which significantly improve turnaround times. Cash collections at branches have been reduced as have the risks associated with them.

Payment methods other than branch payments are:

- eFiling: this required a taxpayer to register as an eFiling client in order to make electronic payments using this channel; and
- Payments at banks: taxpayers can make either an internet banking transfer or an over-the-counter deposit.

Voluntary Disclosure Programme (VDP)

A permanent VDP was introduced in terms of the Tax Administration Act of 2011, in October 2012. The permanent VDP is part of a package of compliance measures aimed at encouraging non-compliant taxpayers to regularise their tax affairs.

International tax treaties

South Africa is a party to a wide range of DTAs, tax information exchange agreements and other agreements. In 2014, the Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD), working with G20 countries, developed the Standard for Automatic Exchange of Financial Account Information in Tax Matters (the Standard) also known as the OECD's Common Reporting Standard (CRS).

The Standard requires the reporting to tax authorities by financial institutions of information in relation to financial accounts they hold for non-resident taxpayers. This information is then automatically exchanged between tax authorities each year in order to tackle cross-border tax evasion.

South Africa is an early adopter of the Automatic Exchange of Information, which includes both the initiatives stemming from South Africa signing an Inter-Governmental Agreement with the US Internal Revenue Service (on their Foreign Account Tax Compliance Act) as well as the CRS.

Why invest in South Africa

South Africa is one of the most sophisticated, diverse and promising emerging markets globally. Strategically located at the tip of the African continent, the country is a key investment location, both for the market opportunities that lie within its borders and as a gateway to the rest of the continent, a market of about one billion people.

South Africa is the economic powerhouse of Africa and forms part of the BRICS group of countries with Brazil, Russia, India and China.

It has a wealth of natural resources (including coal, platinum, coal, gold, iron ore, manganese nickel, uranium and chromium) and it enjoys increased attention from international exploration companies, particularly in the oil and gas sector.

The country has world-class infrastructure, exciting innovation, research and development capabilities and an established manufacturing base.

It is at the forefront of the development and rollout of new green technologies and industries, creating new and sustainable jobs in the process and reducing environmental impact. South Africa has sophisticated financial, legal and telecommunications sectors, and a number of global business process outsourcing operations are located in the country.

It has a host of investment incentives and industrial financing interventions that are aimed at encouraging commercial activity and its trade rules favour a further expansion in South Africa's burgeoning levels of international trade.

Department of Public Enterprises (DPE)

The DPE is government's shareholder representative for the state-owned companies (SOCs) in its portfolio. The department's mandate is to fulfil oversight responsibilities at these companies to ensure that they contribute to the realisation of government's strategic objectives, as articulated in the NDP, government's 2014-2019 MTSF and the Industrial Policy Action Plan.

SOCs are crucial to driving the state's strategic objectives of creating jobs, and enhancing equity and transformation. The department does not directly execute programmes, but seeks to use state ownership in the economy to support the achievement of these objectives.

The NDP identifies the potential of SOC's in building a capable and developmental state. In performing their mandates, SOC's contribute to Outcome 4 (decent employment through inclusive growth) and Outcome 6 (an efficient, competitive and responsive economic infrastructure network) of government's 2014-2019 MTSF.

The DPE oversees the following six SOC's, which are key drivers of economic growth:

- **Alexkor** – A diamond mining company primarily operating in Alexander Bay and the greater Namaqualand.
- **Denel** – A defence company and although it is established as a private company in terms of the Companies Act of 2008, government exercises full control over it.
- **Eskom** – It generates, transmits and distributes electricity to industrial, mining, commercial, agriculture and residential customers and redistributors.
- **South African Forestry Company** – It is the government's forestry company, conducting timber harvesting, timber processing and related activities both domestically and regionally.

- **South African Express Airways** – South African Express Airways is a domestic and regional air carrier with a mandate to be an African airline.
- **Transnet** – It is a freight and logistics company responsible for pipelines, ports and rail transport infrastructure operations in South Africa.

Department of Trade, Industry and Competition (the dtic)

The dtic (formerly the Department of Trade and Industry) works to promote industrialisation and transformation, and respond to unemployment, poverty and inequality.

The strategic direction of this work is derived from the NDP, and is underpinned by Outcome 4 (decent employment through inclusive growth), Outcome 7 (comprehensive rural development and land reform) and Outcome 11 (create a better South Africa and contribute to a better Africa and a better world) of government's 2014-2019 MTSF.

Through the implementation of its higher-impact IPAP, the department will focus over the medium term on providing industrial financing, strengthening export capabilities, and developing industrial infrastructure.

Other drivers include the rapid acceleration of the Black Industrialist Programme, and a much stronger and ongoing focus on labour intensity across the value chains that link the primary sectors of the economy to the manufacturing and services sectors.

Department of Small Business Development (DSBD)

The DSBD promotes and develops small businesses and cooperatives, and its work in this regard focuses on the economic and legislative drivers that stimulate entrepreneurship and contribute to radical economic transformation.

The department provides support for small enterprises directly and indirectly through the Small Enterprise Development Agency (SEDA) and the Small Enterprise Finance Agency (SEFA). However, the black business supplier development programme and the national informal business upliftment scheme are implemented directly by the department.

The Black Business Supplier Development Programme (BBSDP) offers a cost-sharing grant for small enterprises to acquire tools, machinery, equipment and training to a maximum of R1 million per applicant, while the national informal business upliftment scheme aims to develop and grow informal businesses by providing financial, non-financial and infrastructure support services.

The NDP identifies the pivotal role of small, medium and micro enterprises (SMMEs) and cooperatives in contributing to inclusive economic growth and employment. In doing so, the plan highlights the benefits of providing incentive schemes, and reducing the costs of doing business and regulatory burdens for small enterprises.

The work of the DSBD is aligned with and aims to give expression to this vision. Accordingly, over the medium term, the department will focus on: developing, evaluating and reviewing strategies and legislation for small enterprises and cooperatives; increasing support for small enterprises; and developing and supporting cooperatives.

Over the medium term, 2 360 small enterprises are expected to benefit from the BBSDP.

Over the same period, 5 612 informal businesses are expected to benefit from the National Informal Business Upliftment Scheme and 45 informal business structures are expected to be supported through the scheme's infrastructure facility, which provides a 50-50 cost-sharing grant for public and private sector investments in economic infrastructure.

The department continues to provide financial support to cooperatives through the Cooperatives Incentive Scheme. The scheme provides a 100% grant to the maximum of R350 000 per registered primary cooperative and R11 million per registered clustered cooperatives. In doing so, the scheme intends to improve the viability and competitiveness of cooperatives by lowering the cost of doing business.

The SEDA is mandated to implement government's small business strategy, design and implement a standard and common national delivery network for small enterprise development, and integrate government funded small enterprise support agencies across all tiers of government.

The SEFA, which is a wholly owned subsidiary of the Industrial Development Corporation, provides financial products and services to qualifying SMMEs and cooperatives, which can get credit facilities from R500 up to R5-million

when applying through any of SEFA's intermediaries or partnerships.

Banking industry

By end of December 2018, 34 banking institutions were registered and supervised by the Prudential Authority of the SARB: 19 banks and 15 local branches of international banks.

Five largest commercial banks are Capitec Bank, FirstRand, Absa, Nedbank and Standard Bank. Other major players in the banking sector include African Bank, SASFIN and Bidvest Bank.

Johannesburg Stock Exchange Limited (JSE Ltd)

The JSE Ltd is the largest exchange on the African continent and the 19th largest in the world.

In keeping with international practice, the JSE Ltd regulates its members and ensures that markets operate in a transparent way, ensuring investor protection.

The JSE Ltd's roles include regulating applications for listing and ensuring that listed companies continue to meet their obligations.

Jobs Fund

The Jobs Fund was launched in June 2011 to co-finance projects by public, private and non-governmental organisations that will significantly contribute to job creation.


This involves the use of public money to catalyse innovation and investment on behalf of a range of economic stakeholders in activities that contribute directly to enhanced employment creation in South Africa.

The Jobs Fund will consider proposals that perform competitively within enterprise development, infrastructure, institutional capacity building and support for work seekers categories.

As at June 2019, the fund had a portfolio of 125 contracted projects with a total allocation of R6.6 billion in grant funds.

These projects committed to leverage an additional R9.4 billion from partners to create 221 245 permanent jobs.

The Jobs Fund is one of government's key employment facilitation programmes that help address unemployment in South Africa.



Its ultimate goal is to identify and learn from effective interventions and programmes that contribute to accelerated job creation and a better functioning labour market.





OFFICIAL GUIDE TO
South Africa
2018/19

Education

Basic education

All South Africans have a right to basic education and the Bill of Rights obliges the government to progressively make education available and accessible through reasonable measures. The Department of Basic Education (DBE) is responsible for Outcome 1 (quality basic education) of government's Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF) 2014-2019.

The aim of the DBE, which deals with all schools from Grade R to Grade 12, is to develop, maintain and support a South African school education system for the 21st century.

Schooling 2025, the overarching plan for the basic education sector, encapsulates the long-term vision of education priorities, targets and programmes articulated for the sector in the National Development Plan (NDP). The department continues to focus on:

- accelerating delivery and improving school infrastructure; enhancing teaching and learning by ensuring access to high quality learner and teacher support materials;
- improving grade 12 completion rates; providing educational opportunities to learners with severe to profound intellectual disabilities;
- increasing the supply of quality teachers; monitoring performance; and providing nutritious meals to learners in schools through the National School Nutrition Programme (NSNP).

The DBE contributes to the NDP's priority of eliminating poverty and supporting food security through the NSNP. As part of the programme, the department plans to provide meals to more than nine million learners each year over the medium term in over 20 000 quintile 1 to 3 schools.

Providing school infrastructure

The DBE is committed to providing appropriate and adequate basic education infrastructure and its ongoing infrastructure programme includes maintaining existing and building new infrastructure.

It aims to eradicate and replace inappropriate school infrastructure and provide basic services to schools, such as water and sanitation.

The objective of the Accelerated Schools Infrastructure Delivery Initiative is to eradicate the backlog in schools without water, sanitation and electricity, and to replace

schools constructed from inappropriate material such as mud, and asbestos to contribute towards levels of optimum learning and teaching.

School attendance

According to Statistics South Africa's General Household Survey (GHS) of 2018, there were approximately 14,2 million learners at school in 2018. Participation in education institutions was virtually universal (97,4%) by the age of 15 years (the last compulsory school age) and approximately three-quarters (74,5%) of learners were still in school by the age of 18, which usually represents the age at which learners exit grade 12.

A notable percentage of learners, however, remained in primary and secondary schools long after they should have exited those institutions. Almost one-quarter (24,7%) of 20-year olds were, for instance, still attending secondary school.

While the percentage of learners who have achieved grade 12 has been increasing, the survey shows that the percentage of individuals who attended post-school education has remained relatively low for youth aged 19 to 22 years of age.

The percentage of persons aged seven to 24 who attended educational institutions remained consistent at approximately 75% between 2002 and 2018. The highest increases in enrolment rates are observed in Free State (+3,2 percentage points), Northern Cape (+3,0 percentage points) and KwaZulu-Natal (+2,4 percentage points), while Mpumalanga experienced a decrease of 3,4 percentage points over the period.

In terms of the percentage of learners aged 7 to 24 years who attended educational institutions by metropolitan area, the highest percentage was observed in Buffalo City (82,0%), followed by Nelson Mandela Bay (80,6%), and Mangaung (78,7%). The lowest attendance was observed in Cape Town (67,2%) and eThekweni (70,5%).

The percentage of students attending universities, technical and vocational colleges remain very similar throughout the reference period.

In 2018, 32,2% of individuals aged five years and older attended an educational institution. Nationally, 87,7% of individuals aged five years and older and who attended educational institutions, attended school, while a further 4,5%

attended tertiary institutions. By comparison, only 2,3% of individuals attended Technical and Vocational Education and Training (TVET) colleges.

While the percentage of individuals aged five years and older and who attended school was particularly high in Limpopo (93,2%), much lower figures were noted in Gauteng (79,8%) and Western Cape (84,3%).

Attendance of higher education institutions was most common in Gauteng (8,7%) and Western Cape (5,8%). This is reflecting the higher number of post school educational institutions, such as universities, in those provinces.

The percentage of learners that attended no-fee schools increased from 21,4% in 2007 to 67,2% by 2018. Almost one-quarter (24,2%) of learners who have dropped out of school before the age of 18 years, however, put forward a lack of money ('no money for fees') as the main reason. Other reasons included poor academic performance (22,9%), family commitments (7,9%) and a feeling that education is useless (7,5%).

Educational attainment

The percentage of individuals aged 20 years and older who did not have any education decreased from 11,4% in 2002 to 4,5% in 2018, while those with at least a grade 12 qualification increased from 30,5% to 45,2% over the same period.

Inter-generational functional literacy has also decreased markedly. While 57,8% of South Africans over the age of 60 years did not at least complete a Grade 7 qualification, this figure dropped to only 4,4% for those aged 20- 39 years of age. Less than six per cent (5,5%) of adults over the age of 20 years were considered illiterate.

Enhancing teaching and learning

Central to providing quality basic education is ensuring the delivery of an improved curriculum and access to learning and teaching support material of high quality, and ensuring this material is used effectively.

Accordingly, the department expects to print and deliver an estimated 61 million workbooks for grades R to 9 in each year over the medium term in life skills, languages and mathematics. These workbooks are expected to be distributed to more than 24 000 public schools across South Africa.

The department intends to promote teaching and learning in, and improving the learner pass rates of, mathematics, science and technology.

To achieve this, the DBE plans to support:

- 50 000 learners in co-curricular services related to mathematics, science and technology;
- 1 500 teachers and subject advisers in curriculum assessment policy statement training;
- 1 000 teachers in structured teacher development programmes specific to these subjects, and train
- 1 000 mathematics subject advisers on the mathematics framework.

To provide appropriate teaching and learning facilities at schools, the department plans to support 300 teachers in information and communications technology integration training; supply 300 schools with subject-specific computer hardware and software; repair, maintain or replace workshop equipment and machinery at 200 technical schools, and provide 1 000 schools with laboratory equipment, apparatus and consumables.

The department aims to increase the supply of newly qualified teachers in mathematics, science and technology in different phases by providing 38 000 Funza Lushaka bursaries to prospective teachers over the medium term. Funza Lushaka bursary recipients qualify for fee-free funding at universities.

Expanding access to Early Childhood Development (ECD)

The DBE continues to work with the Department of Social Development in expanding access to ECD. ECD programmes are offered at day-care centres, crèches, playgroups, nursery schools and in pre-primary schools.

By end of 2018, about 38,4% of the 0-4-year-olds attended these kinds of facilities and access to these facilities was highest in Gauteng (49,8%) and Western Cape (43,7%).

Although 49,2% of children aged 0-4 years stayed at home with parents or guardians, the survey suggests that stimulation might be lacking. Almost one-half (46,8%) of parent or guardians never read books with children while 43,1% never drew or coloured with the children.

Improving matric completion rates

The Second Chance programme, which is in its third year of implementation, aims to increase the number of young people obtaining a matric qualification.

Over the medium term, the department expects 135 000 learners to gain subject passes through the programme, and will provide support to these learners by means of face-to-face classes, broadcast media, online and offline facilities, and printed materials.

The development and distribution of online psychosocial programmes to support learners in their preparations for the matric examinations include tutoring, access to resources, one-on-one career guidance, life orientation and telephonic counselling.

Support for learners with intellectual disabilities

In its second year of implementation, the Learners with Profound Intellectual Disabilities Grant aims to improve the provision of quality education to learners with severe to profound intellectual disabilities.

Over the MTEF period, funds from the grant are intended to provide access to quality, publicly funded education to more than 10 000 such learners by recruiting nine provincial coordinators for the grant and 230 outreach team members.

While the provincial coordinators will ensure the effective management of the grant, the outreach team members will strengthen the capacity of district-based support teams and provide support to caregivers and learners.

The nine provincial coordinators, 230 outreach team members, 900 caregivers from 500 care centres, and 919 teachers in 104 selected schools that have enrolled learners will be provided with training on the learners with severe to profound intellectual disability policy and learning programme.

Monitoring performance

The department aims to ensure that the education sector assesses the quality of teaching and learning, and provides remedial action in identified areas to improve learning outcomes in numeracy and literacy.

As such, the national assessment programme has been redesigned to enable the implementation of a three-tier model that involves systemic evaluation, diagnostic assessment and summative examination.

As part of the redesign, over the medium term, the department intended to focus on conducting the first cycle of systemic evaluation by providing all schools with a series of diagnostic instruments for teachers to use in their classroom teaching, and setting up national and provincial systems for the phasing in of a universal external examination at the end of Grade 9.

To assist teachers in measuring the reading progress of learners at different intervals in grades 1 to 3, the department continues to print, distribute and implement the Early Grade Reading Assessment toolkit.

The use of the toolkit has been incorporated in the teacher training programme in the primary school reading intervention programme, and teacher training workshops on how to use the toolkits were expected to be held in all provinces over the MTEF period.

In 2019, the programme was expected to be implemented in 4 700 schools, to be expanded incrementally to 20 000 schools over the medium term. An estimated 700 000 learners in grades 1 to 3 were expected to benefit from the programme over the same period.

Role players

Provincial departments of basic education

The DBE shares a concurrent role with the provincial departments for basic schooling and ECD, but it is the responsibility of each provincial department to finance and manage its schools directly. District offices are the provincial departments' main interface with schools.

South African Council for Educators (SACE)

The SACE aims to enhance the status of the teaching profession through registering educators appropriately, managing professional development and promoting a code of ethics for all educators.

Umalusi Council for Quality Assurance in General and Further Education and Training

Umalusi sets and maintains standards in general and further education and training through the development and management of the general and further education and training qualifications sub-framework. The Nguni name means "herder" or "shepherd."

Programmes and projects

Learning and teaching support material

Educational portal

Through the Thutong Portal (www.thutong.doe.gov.za), the DBE aims to lead the drive to improve learning in the country through appropriate use of technology.

The Thutong Portal is the online point of entry to a comprehensive array of free educational resources, policy information, and interactive services concerning all aspects of the South African schooling sector.

It provides relevant information and services about the South African school curriculum, teacher development, school administration, and management.

To help develop and improve the quality of education in South Africa, the curriculum resources contained in the Thutong Portal describes the teaching and learning pathways and processes that learners should work through in order to achieve identified Learning Outcomes and/or Assessment Standards as set out in the South African National Curriculum Statements.

Thutong's key focus is on creating strong and vibrant online communities of practice to facilitate discussion and sharing of information and ideas amongst peer networks, and in an effort to encourage South African educators to develop and improve education by sharing the country's common intellectual capital.

Thutong – meaning “a place of learning” in Setswana – features a searchable database of web-based curriculum resources for various education sectors, grades and subjects.

School fees and exemption

School fees are set at annual public meetings of school governing bodies (SGBs), where parents vote on the amount to be paid.

Parents who cannot afford to pay school fees can apply to the SGB for conditional, partial or full exemption from paying school fees. Schools must not charge school fees for orphans.

The right not to charge school fees will be limited to the schools that have been declared no-fee schools. The names of the no-fee schools, which are determined based on the economic level of the community around the school, will be published in a provincial gazette.

Higher education and training

The DHET continues to focus on creating a transformed higher education sector that is of high quality, is demographically representative, and provides students and staff with opportunities through the implementation of the university capacity development programme.

The NDP envisages that by 2030, South Africans should have access to a post-school education system that empowers them to fulfil their potential. Outcome 5 (a skilled and capable workforce to support an inclusive growth path) of government's MTSF gives effect to this vision, stating that graduates of the post-school system should possess the skills and knowledge that allow them to meet the current and future needs of society and the economy.

Outcome 5 also highlights the need to expand access to programmes that address the labour market's need for intermediate skills and include a practical component.

The DHET is responsible for post-school education and training in universities, colleges and adult education centres.

The objective of the Post-School Education and Training function is that all South Africans have equitable access to relevant and quality post-school education and training.

Institutions of higher learning

South Africa's higher education landscape comprises the following institutions:

- Cape Peninsula University of Technology
- Central University of Technology, Free State
- Durban Institute of Technology
- Mangosuthu University of Technology
- National Institute for Higher Education, Northern Cape
- National Institute for Higher Education, Mpumalanga
- Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University
- North West University
- Rhodes University
- Sol Plaatje University, Eastern Cape
- Tshwane University of Technology
- University of Cape Town
- University of Fort Hare
- University of the Free State
- University of Johannesburg
- University of KwaZulu-Natal
- University of Limpopo

- University of Mpumalanga
- University of Pretoria
- University of South Africa
- University of Stellenbosch
- University of Venda
- University of the Western Cape
- University of the Witwatersrand
- University of Zululand
- Vaal University of Technology
- Walter Sisulu University, Eastern Cape
- Sefako Makgatho Health Sciences University.

Technical and Vocational Education and Training

The DHET is mandated to provide quality skills programmes that address the need in the labour market for intermediate skills accompanied by practical training. TVET comprises vocational, occupational and artisan education and training as offered by TVET colleges.

This band of education and training is also referred to as 'post-school', meaning that it refers to education and training that takes place after leaving school, even if only with a Grade 9 completed.

The only age restriction for a person wishing to study at the TVET level is that the person should be 16 years or older. There are 50 registered and accredited public TVET colleges in South Africa operating on more than 264 campuses spread across the rural and urban areas of the country.

Role players South African Qualifications Authority (SAQA)

SAQA is a statutory body that oversees the development of the NQF by formulating and publishing policies and criteria for the registration of organisations. It also oversees the implementation of the national framework by ensuring the registration, accreditation and assignment of functions.

Council on Higher Education (CHE)

The CHE is an independent statutory body to advise the Minister, monitor trends in the higher education system and assure and promote the quality of higher education. The CHE also has the mandate to audit higher education institutions,

accredit programmes offered, develop a higher education qualifications framework and set standards.

Quality Council for Trades and Occupations (QCTO)

The primary functions of the QCTO are to design and develop occupational standards and qualifications and to submit these to SAQA for registration on the NQF, establish and maintain occupational standards and qualifications, ensure the quality of occupational standards and qualifications and learning in and for the workplace, promote the objectives of the NQF, liaise with the National Skills Authority (NSA) on the suitability and adequacy of occupational standards and qualifications, and on the quality of learning in and for the workplace.

Sector education and training authorities (SETAs)

SETAs continue to strengthen and deliver relevant priority skills to South Africa's labour market, with particular emphasis on artisan development, apprenticeships, learnerships, internships and bursaries; and partnerships with TVET colleges, universities and the market to provide work experience opportunities

SETAs are mandated by the Skills Development Act of 1998 to implement national, sector and workplace strategies to develop and improve skills in the South African workforce; provide learnerships that lead to a recognised occupational qualification and fund skills development.

The authorities derive their objectives directly from the third National Skills Development Strategy (NSDS), which aims to: increase access to occupationally directed programmes; promote the growth of public TVET colleges; address low levels of youth and adult literacy and numeracy skills; and encourage the better use of workplace-based skills development.

These objectives are in line with Outcome 5 (a skilled and capable workforce to support an inclusive growth path) of government's MTSF 2014-2019.

National Skills Authority

The NSA is an advisory body to give guidance on:

- policy, strategy, implementation and NSA allocations
- liaising with SETAs about policy, strategy and sector-skills plans
- implementing the NSDS
- reviewing the accounts and balance sheet of NSA annually
- receiving and using information from the Skills Development Planning Unit.

National Student Financial Aid Scheme (NSFAS)

The NSFAS is responsible for providing loans and bursaries, developing criteria and conditions for the granting of loans and bursaries to eligible students, raising funds, recovering loans, maintaining and analysing a database of funded students, undertaking research for the better use of financial resources and advising the Minister on matters relating to student financial aid.

In March 2019, the DHET allocated an additional R967 million to the NSFAS to settle the historic debt owed to universities by 52 514 NSFAS-funded continuing students.





OFFICIAL GUIDE TO
South Africa
2018/19

**Environment,
Forestry and
Fisheries**



Following the reconfiguration of government departments in June 2019, the Department of the Environment, Forestry and Fisheries (DEFF) was established after transferring the functions of forestry and fisheries from the then Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries (now called Department of Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development).

Chapter 5 of the National Development Plan (NDP) emphasises the importance of environmental sustainability for robust socio-economic development.

This is given expression by outcome 4 (decent employment through inclusive growth) and outcome 10 (protect and enhance our environmental assets and natural resources) of government's 2014-2019 Medium Term Strategic Framework.

Government prioritises the management, protection and conservation of South Africa's environment and natural resources.

According to Statistics South Africa's General Household Survey (GHS) of 2018, waste removal problems and littering (42,6%), as well as land degradation and soil erosion (32,7%), were the two environmental problems that concerned the highest percentage of households in 2018.

Strikingly, the percentage of households that considered land degradation and soil erosion a problem increased from 15,6% in 2003 to 34,1% in 2014 before dropping slightly to 32,7% in 2018.

The proportion of households that felt that there were problems with littering and waste removal in their areas also increased notably since 2003 when 28,7% of households regarded this as a problem.

Households that considered air pollution to be a problem decreased from 22,7% in 2003 to 18,9% in 2018. This corresponds with a switch from wood and coal to electricity as a main source of energy.

The GHS of 2018 also showed that waste removal problems and littering (37,0%), land degradation (21,0%) and air pollution (19,8%) were the most common environmental problems in metros.

With the exception of Buffalo City in the Eastern Cape, where land degradation (43,3%) was considered the most important environmental problem, waste removal and littering was considered most important, by some margin, across the other metros.

In Mangaung in the Free State, 64,7% of households considered waste removal and littering a problem.

Water pollution was considered the least common problem across all metropolitan areas except for City of Johannesburg in Gauteng and Cape Town in the Western Cape where air pollution was considered a slightly smaller environmental concern.

The survey also found that during the 12 months preceding the survey, 45,5% of households used pesticides in their dwellings and 10,5% used pesticides in their yards. A further 6,2% used herbicides in their yards or gardens.

National Action Programme (NAP) to combat desertification

South Africa, as a Party to the United Nations (UN) Convention to Combat Desertification, reviewed the 2004 NAP to combat desertification, land degradation and to mitigate the effects of drought for South Africa and developed a new NAP for the period 2017 to 2027.

Since approximately 91% of South Africa's landscape is drylands, it makes it susceptible to desertification.

Both desertification and land degradation are intricately linked to food security, poverty, urbanisation, climate change, and biodiversity and therefore are among the most critical environmental challenges in South Africa. The NAP will be a key tool in addressing these threats.

Role players

South African National Biodiversity Institute

SANBI contributes to South Africa's sustainable development by facilitating access to biodiversity data, generating information and knowledge, building capacity, providing policy advice, showcasing and conserving biodiversity in its national botanical and zoological gardens.

SANBI engages in ecosystem restoration and rehabilitation, leads the human capital development strategy of the sector and manages the National Botanical Gardens as 'windows' to South Africa's biodiversity for enjoyment and education.

South Africa is one of the most biologically diverse countries in the world, after Indonesia and Brazil. The country is surrounded by two oceans, occupies only about 2% of the world's land area, but is home to nearly: 10% of the world's plants; 7% of the reptiles, birds and mammals and 15% of known coastal marine species. The country comprises nine biomes (unique vegetation landscapes), three of which have been declared global biodiversity hotspots.

Biodiversity richness is one of South Africa's greatest assets, in terms of landscapes, ecosystems and species – the web of natural life – provides goods and services vital for human well-being and the survival of the planet.

South Africa is one of the 30 driest countries in the world. This phenomena has been intensified by a prolonged drought.

A critical programme aimed at improving the water security is the control of invasive plants in the catchments and wetlands. Recent research estimates that protection and clearing of river catchments can increase South Africa's water supply by as much as one sixth, at a fraction of the cost of projects such as desalination.

The Working for Water Programme has cleared and maintained almost 3.5 million hectares of land. In 2019, work was being intensified in both the key catchment and wetland areas with 190 wetlands scheduled for repair.

Wetlands and estuaries also play a crucial role in flood management. Accordingly, the department is working with other affected departments and entities on a joint Wetlands Framework to improve wetland protection, management and conservation in an integrated manner.

New areas – Dyer, Geyser and Dassen islands in the Western Cape, and Kgaswane Mountain Reserve in North West – have been added to the prestigious Ramsar List of Wetlands of global significance.

South African National Parks

SANParks is the custodian of 19 national parks located in diverse vegetation types: Desert, Grassland, Forest, Succulent Karoo, Nama Karoo, Fynbos, Savanna, Albany Thicket, Indian Ocean Coastal Bled and Azon. The park system spans seven of South Africa's provinces, consists of over four million hectares (40 000 km²) and makes up about 67% of the land under formal conservation in the country.

The organisation plays a significant role in the promotion of South Africa's nature-based tourism or ecotourism business, targeted at both international and domestic tourism markets.

Every year, from 14 to 18 September, all South Africans can visit national parks free of charge.

The national parks are:

- Addo Elephant National Park
- Agulhas National Park

- Ai-Ais/Richtersveld Transfrontier Park
- Augrabies Falls National Park
- Bontebok National Park
- Camdeboo National Park
- Garden Route (Tsitsikamma, Knysna and Wilderness) National Park
- Golden Gate Highlands National Park
- Karoo National Park
- Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park
- Kruger National Park
- Mapungubwe National Park
- Marakele National Park
- Mokala National Park
- Mountain Zebra National Park
- Namaqua National Park
- Table Mountain National Park (which incorporates the Cape of Good Hope, Table Mountain and Silvermine nature reserves)
- Tankwa Karoo National Park
- West Coast National Park.

SANParks is the leading conservation authority in all national parks around South Africa and responsible for protected land in 19 national parks. A transfrontier conservation area (TFCA) is a cross-border region.

The conservation status of the areas within a TFCA ranges from national parks, private game reserves and communal natural-resource management areas to hunting-concession areas. TFCAs allow tourists easy movement across international boundaries into adjoining conservation areas.

The seven TFCAs are:

- Ai-Ais/Richtersveld
- Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park
- Kavango-Zambezi
- Greater Mapungubwe
- Great Limpopo Transfrontier Park
- Lubombo Transfrontier Conservation and Resource Area
- Maloti-Drakensberg Transfrontier Conservation and Development Area.

A biosphere designation is given by the UN Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) to special landscapes where people are collaborating to ensure their environmental integrity as the basis for their economic development.

Biosphere reserves are nominated by their governments for inclusion in the Man and the Biosphere Programme.

South Africa's biosphere reserves include:

- **Vhembe**, situated in the north-east of Limpopo, which includes the northern part of the Kruger National Park; the Makuleke Wetland, which is protected under the Ramsar Convention; the Soutpansberg and Blouberg biodiversity hot spots; and the Makgabeng Plateau.
- The **Kogelberg Reserve** on the country's southern coast is in the middle of the Cape Floral Region and home to 1 880 different plant species, 77 of which are found only in this region.
- The **Cape West Coast Biosphere Reserve** starts in Cape Town in the southern suburb of Diep River and stretches up the west coast as far as the Berg River, encompassing parts of the Cape Floral Region. The reserve includes the Ramsar-protected Langebaan Lagoon as well as Dassen Island, which is home to several protected bird species.
- The **Cape Winelands Biosphere Reserve** includes a part of the Cape Floral Region, as well as the wine-growing region.
- The **Biosphere Reserve**, in the Waterberg in Limpopo is an important catchment area for the Limpopo Basin, with four large rivers originating within its borders – the Lephalale, Mokolo, Matlabas and Magalakwena rivers.
- The **Kruger-to-Canyons Biosphere Reserve** stretches from the Kruger National Park to the Blyde River Canyon. It is an important conservation area as it covers three biomes.
- The **Gouritz Cluster Biosphere Reserve** is also recognised by the UNESCO in terms of the Man and Biosphere Programme.

Areas of conservation

Protected areas

South Africa aims to expand the conservation areas under formal protection to the international standard of 10% of the total area of the country. South Africa is home to more than nine million hectares of protected areas network, which includes national parks, nature reserves and world heritage sites, equating to about 8% of the country's land.

These protected areas, among other things, serve as sites for conserving the country's ecosystems, protection of high biodiversity value and provision of ecosystem services.

Most of these protected areas are geographically located in rural areas, forming an integral system with rural communities whose livelihoods and cultures are closely dependent on.

Scientific reserves

Scientific reserves are sensitive and undisturbed areas managed for research, monitoring and the maintenance of genetic sources. These include Marion Island and the Prince Edward Islands near Antarctica. Access is limited to researchers and staff.

On 2 September 2019, the SA Agulhas II and the Gough 65 expedition team departed on this year's Relief Voyage to Gough Island. South Africa's use of Gough Island is primarily to operate a full year weather observation station, one of three important weather stations globally.

The quality of South African and international weather forecasts relies on the availability of data inputs from the Gough Island region. Gough Island is a volcanic island rising from the South Atlantic Ocean to heights of over 900 metres above sea level with an area of 91 km².

Wilderness areas

These areas are extensive, uninhabited and underdeveloped, and access is strictly controlled with no vehicles allowed. The highest management priority is the maintenance of the intrinsic wilderness character.

Wilderness areas include the Cederberg Wilderness Area and Dassen Island in the Western Cape, and the Baviaans-kloof Wilderness Area in the Eastern Cape.

Biomes

The nine major terrestrial biomes or habitat types in South Africa are divided into 70 veld types. The biomes are the Savanna, Nama-Karoo, Succulent Karoo, Grassland, Fynbos, Forest, Albany Thicket, Desert and Indian Ocean Coastal Belt. The Fynbos Biome is one of only six floral kingdoms worldwide.

World Heritage sites

South Africa has 10 World Heritage sites proclaimed by UNESCO, namely:

- **Robben Island** (Western Cape). Robben Island was used at various times between the 17th and 20th centuries as

a prison, a hospital for socially unacceptable groups and a military base. Its buildings, particularly those of the late 20th century such as the maximum security prison for political prisoners, witness the triumph of democracy and freedom over oppression and racism. It is most famous for the incarceration of political prisoners, including former President Nelson Mandela, who was imprisoned for 18 of his 27 years in jail.

- **iSimangaliso Wetlands Park** (KwaZulu-Natal). It was formerly called the Greater St Lucia Wetland Park. The ongoing fluvial, marine and aeolian processes in the site have produced a variety of landforms, including coral reefs, long sandy beaches, coastal dunes, lake systems, swamps, and extensive reed and papyrus wetlands. The interplay of the park's environmental heterogeneity with major floods and coastal storms and a transitional geographic location between subtropical and tropical Africa has resulted in exceptional species diversity and ongoing speciation. The mosaic of landforms and habitat types creates breathtaking scenic vistas. The site contains critical habitats for a range of species from Africa's marine, wetland and savannah environments.
- **Cradle of Humankind** (Gauteng). The Taung Skull Fossil Site, part of the extension to the site inscribed in 1999, is the place where in 1924 the celebrated Taung Skull – a specimen of the species *Australopithecus africanus* – was found. Makapan Valley, also in the site, features in its many archaeological caves traces of human occupation and evolution dating back some 3.3 million years. The area contains essential elements that define the origin and evolution of humanity. Fossils found there have enabled the identification of several specimens of early hominids, more particularly of *Paranthropus*, dating back between 4.5 million and 2.5 million years, as well as evidence of the domestication of fire 1.8 million to 1 million years ago. It includes the hominid fossil sites at Swartkrans, Sterkfontein and Kromdraai.
- **Ukhahlamba-Drakensberg Park** (KwaZulu-Natal). The park has outstanding natural beauty, Africa's highest mountain range south of Kilimanjaro, and the largest and most concentrated series of rock art paintings in Africa.

The site harbours endangered species such as the Cape vulture (*Gyps coprotheres*) and the bearded vulture (*Gypaetus barbatus*).

- **Mapungubwe Heritage Site** (Limpopo). Mapungubwe is an open, expansive savannah landscape at the confluence of the Limpopo and Shashe rivers. Mapungubwe developed into the largest kingdom in the sub-continent before it was abandoned in the 14th century. What survives are the almost untouched remains of the palace sites and also the entire settlement area dependent upon them, as well as two earlier capital sites, the whole presenting an unrivalled picture of the development of social and political structures over some 400 years.
- **Cape Floral Kingdom** (Western Cape). It is one of the world's great centres of terrestrial biodiversity. The extended property includes national parks, nature reserves, wilderness areas, State forests and mountain catchment areas. These elements add a significant number of endemic species associated with the Fynbos vegetation, a fine-leaved sclerophyllic shrubland adapted to both a Mediterranean climate and periodic fires, which is unique to the Cape Floral Region.
- **Richtersveld Cultural and Botanical Landscape** (Northern Cape). The 160 000 hectares (ha) of dramatic mountainous desert constitutes a cultural landscape.
- **Vredefort Dome** (Gauteng). This is a representative part of a larger meteorite impact structure or astrobleme. Dating back to over two million years, it is the oldest astrobleme yet found on Earth. With a radius of 190 km, it is also the largest and the most deeply eroded. Vredefort Dome bears witness to the world's greatest known single energy release event, which had devastating global effects including, according to some scientists, major evolutionary changes. It provides critical evidence of the Earth's geological history and is crucial to understanding of the evolution of the planet. Despite the importance of impact sites to the planet's history, geological activity on the Earth's surface has led to the disappearance of evidence from most of them, and Vredefort is the only example to provide a full geological profile of an astrobleme below the crater floor.
- **!Khomani Cultural Landscape**. (Located at the border with Botswana and Namibia in the northern part of the country, coinciding with the Kalahari Gemsbok National).

The large expanse of sand contains evidence of human occupation from the Stone Age to the present and is associated with the culture of the formerly nomadic ǀKhomani San people and the strategies that allowed them to adapt to harsh desert conditions. They developed a specific ethnobotanical knowledge, cultural practices and a worldview related to the geographical features of their environment. The ǀKhomani Cultural Landscape bears testimony to the way of life that prevailed in the region and shaped the site over thousands of years.

- **Makhonjwa Mountains, known as the Barberton Greenstone Belt.** One of the world's oldest geological structures, the Makhonjwa Mountains in Barberton, Mpumalanga represent the best-preserved succession of volcanic and sedimentary rock dating back 3.6 to 3.25 billion years, when the first continents were starting to form on the primitive Earth. It features meteor-impact fallback breccias resulting from the impact of meteorites formed just after the Great Bombardment (4.6 to 3.8 billion years ago).

In addition to sites inscribed on the World Heritage list, member states can maintain a list of tentative sites that they may consider for nomination. Nominations for the World Heritage list are only accepted if the site was previously listed on the tentative list. South Africa had listed the following properties on its tentative list:

- Succulent Karoo Protected Areas
- Liberation Heritage Route
- Early Farmsteads of the Cape Winelands
- The Emergence of Modern Humans: The Pleistocene occupation sites of South Africa
- Human Rights, Liberation Struggle and Reconciliation: Nelson Mandela Legacy Sites.

Wetlands

Wetlands support a range of specialised plant, insect and mammal life and also supply food, grazing, building and craft material to people. They are able to improve water quality, reduce flood impacts, control erosion and sustain river flows.

South Africa's Ramsar sites include:

- Barberspan
- Blesbokspruit Nylsvley Nature Reserve
- De Hoop Vlei
- De Mond (Heuningnes Estuary)

- Kosi Bay
- Langebaan
- Makuleke Wetlands
- Ndumo Game Reserve
- Ntsikeni Nature Reserve
- Nylsvley Nature Reserve
- Orange River Mouth Wetland
- Prince Edward Islands in Antarctica
- Seekoeivlei
- St Lucia
- Turtle beaches and coral reefs of Tongaland
- Ukhahlamba-Drakensberg Park
- Verlorenvlei Nature Reserve
- Wilderness Lakes
- Dyer, Geyser and Dassen islands
- Kgaswane Mountain Reserve.

Marine protected areas (MPAs)

Government shares joint responsibility for South Africa's MPAs with SANParks and Ezemvelo KwaZulu-Natal Wildlife.

South Africa's MPAs include the:

- Aliwal Shoal, KwaZulu-Natal
- Betty's Bay, Western Cape
- Bird Island, Eastern Cape
- De Hoop, Western Cape
- Dwesa-Cwebe, Eastern Cape
- False Bay, Western Cape
- Goukamma, Western Cape
- Hluleka, Eastern Cape
- iSimangaliso, KwaZulu-Natal
- Langebaan Lagoon, Sixteen Mile Beach, Malgas Island, Marcus Island, Jutten Island, Western Cape
- Pondoland, Eastern Cape.
- Robberg, Western Cape
- Sardinia Bay, Eastern Cape
- Stilbaai, Western Cape
- Table Mountain, Western Cape
- Trafalgar, KwaZulu-Natal
- Tsitsikamma, Western Cape.

Zoological gardens

The **National Zoological Gardens (NZG)** of South Africa, also known as the Pretoria Zoo, is the largest zoo in the country and

the only one with national status. It is home to approximately 5 000 different mammals, birds, fish, reptiles, amphibians and invertebrates, comprising around 600 species and subspecies.

One of its unique features is that it has the largest inland aquarium in Africa, which also has a marine fish component. It is also the only zoo in South Africa that is home to Koalas, Okapi, Komodo Dragons and Forest buffalo, to name but a few.

Some of the government and private venues include the following:

- **Joburg Zoo** in Johannesburg, which was founded in 1904, covers 55 ha of land and houses over 320 species of animals.
- **Mitchell Park Zoo** in Durban, which was named after Sir Charles Bullen Hugh Mitchell, is the country's second oldest zoo after the NZG in Pretoria.
- **East London Zoo** is located in the Queens Park Zoological Gardens in East London, Eastern Cape. It is financed and managed by the Buffalo City Metropolitan Municipality. Apart from the animals, the zoo and gardens contain a treasure trove of flora and fauna, some of which is only found in the Eastern Cape.
- **Birds of Eden** is the world's largest free flight aviary and bird sanctuary, located near Plettenberg Bay in the Western Cape, South Africa. Its unique two hectare dome (the world's largest) spans over a gorge of indigenous forest. It is home to over 3 500 birds from over 220 species, with the main focus being African birds.
- **Umgeni River Bird Park** in Durban, in KwaZulu-Natal, is situated in 3.5 hectares of lush tropical landscaping and houses an ever-increasing collection of more than 800 birds from 200 species.
- **World of Birds** is the largest bird park in Africa and one of the few large bird parks in the world. Over 3 000 birds (and small animals) of 400 different species are uniquely presented in more than 100 spacious landscaped walk through aviaries, allowing you the most intimate closeness with nature.
- The **Bushbabies and Monkey Sanctuary**, situated in Hartbeesport Dam provides an environment where monkeys (primates) can be given their freedom in a natural environment. The sanctuary situated in one of the many

Kloofs (Gorges) of the Magaliesberg mountain range provides the perfect environment for Monkeys from around the world.

Conservation centres

There are a number of game-breeding centres in South Africa. The NZG of South Africa is responsible for the management of the **Mokopane Biodiversity Conservation Centre (MBCC)**, covering 1 394 ha.

The MBCC is home to an abundance of exotic and indigenous fauna such as lemur, the rare tsessebe, roan antelope and black rhino. In 2007, it was proclaimed as a protected area as a Fossil Hominid Site of South Africa: Mokopan Valley.

The **Ann van Dyk Cheetah Centre**, formerly known as the De Wildt Cheetah Centre, is a breeding sanctuary for cheetahs and other endangered animals situated in Hartbeespoort. Other creatures being housed at the centre include African wild dogs, brown hyenas, servals, suni antelopes, riverine rabbits and a population of vultures.

The **Hoedspruit Endangered Species Centre (HESC)** in Limpopo focuses on the breeding and conservation of a variety of animal species, including African wild cat, ground hornbill, sable antelope, lion, cheetah and rhino. The HESC works closely with advisory committees of the Pretoria Zoo and the University of Pretoria.

Aquariums and oceanariums

There are aquariums in Pretoria, Port Elizabeth, Cape Town, Durban and East London. The Aquarium and Reptile Park of the NZG of South Africa in Pretoria is the largest inland aquarium in Africa.

The Port Elizabeth Oceanarium's exhibits include an underwater observation area, a dolphin research centre, various smaller tanks containing 40 different species of bony fish and two larger tanks that display sharks and stingrays.

Officially opened on 2 December 1931, the East London Aquarium is the oldest public aquarium in Southern Africa.

At the Two Oceans Aquarium situated at the Victoria and Alfred Waterfront, Cape Town, more than 3 000 specimens represent some 300 species of fish, invertebrates, mammals, birds and plants supported by the waters along the Cape coast. The aquarium at uShaka Marine World in Durban incorporates both fresh and sea-water species.

Snake and reptile parks

The **Port Elizabeth Snake Park** at Bayworld has a wide variety of South African and foreign reptiles. The Aquarium and Reptile Park at the NZG in Pretoria houses 80 reptile species from all over the world.

The **Hartbeespoort Dam Snake and Animal Park** near Pretoria features one of the finest reptile collections in southern Africa.

The **Pure Venom Reptile Farm** is one of the largest of South Africa's reptile parks. It is situated inland from Shelly Beach, on KwaZulu-Natal's South Coast. The Croc River Enviro Park in Nelspruit, Mpumalanga is the largest facility of its type in Africa.

Khamai Reptile Centre primarily aims to conserve and breed endangered reptiles. Located outside Hoedspruit, it offers a close-up look at many local as well as exotic snakes, crocodiles and lizards.

The **Croc City Crocodile and Reptile Park** breeds crocodiles on a farm in Nietgedacht, Chartwell and other resident reptiles.

Private sector involvement

More than 400 organisations in South Africa concentrate on conservation, wildlife and the general environment, while more than 30 botanical and horticultural organisations concentrate on the conservation of the country's fauna and flora. These include the:

- BirdLife South Africa
- Botanical Society of South Africa
- Centre for Rehabilitation of Wildlife
- Conservation International
- Delta Environmental Centre
- Dolphin Action Protection Group
- EcoLink
- Endangered Wildlife Trust
- Ezemvelo KZN Wildlife
- Green Trust
- Keep South Africa Beautiful
- KwaZulu-Natal Sharks Board
- National Conservancy Association of South Africa
- Peace Parks Foundation
- Southern African Foundation for the Conservation of Coastal Birds
- Trees and Food for Africa

- Wildlife and Environment Society of South Africa
- World Wildlife Fund of South Africa.

Biodiversity

South Africa is home to some 24 000 species, around 7% of the world's vertebrate species, and 5,5% of the world's known insect species (only about half of the latter have been described).

In terms of the number of endemic species of mammals, birds, reptiles and amphibians found in South Africa, the country ranks as the fifth richest in Africa and the 24th richest in the world.

Marine biodiversity is also high, with more than 11 000 species found in South African waters, which is about 15% of global species. More than 25% of these species (or 3 496 species) are endemic to South Africa, many of which are threatened, especially in river ecosystems (82%) and estuaries (77%).

Poaching

Fighting poaching, particularly rhino poaching in the Kruger National Park and abalone poaching in Western Cape, remains a top priority. Strategies to combat wildlife crime involve the technological improvement of early warning systems and risk assessments, better coordination with law-enforcement agencies, and the deployment of additional rangers.

Recycling

The **Waste Management Bureau**, which was established in 2016 in terms of the National Environmental Management: Waste Management Act of 2014, is tasked with promoting and facilitating the minimisation, reuse, recycling and recovery of waste by providing specialist advice and support for the development of integrated waste management plans for industry and municipalities.

The bureau is also tasked with monitoring the implementation of industry waste management plans, and managing the disbursement of revenue generated from charges for waste management.

The **National Regulator for Compulsory Specifications** also receives funding to implement compulsory specifications for plastic bags.

The **National Recycling Forum** is a non-profit organisation created to promote the recovery and recycling of recyclable materials in South Africa.

Collect-a-Can, one of the oldest recycling initiatives in South Africa, has been instrumental in creating a culture of recycling in the country. It has obtained local and international acclaim for its contribution towards protecting the environment, as well as its significant contribution to job creation and poverty alleviation.

Monitoring climate change and air quality

To contribute towards a reduction in air pollution, government plans to increase the number of government-owned air quality monitoring stations reporting to the South African air quality information system from 117 in 2018/19 to 125 in 2021/22.

A substantial budget will also enable the department to roll out the Let's Respond toolkit to a projected 40 municipalities to integrate their climate change responses into the department's planning documents.

This entails reviewing the developmental plans of municipalities and guiding them to be responsive to climate change, with particular focus on the effects of climate change on vulnerable communities and sustainable economic development.

Green economy

Through South Africa's Green Economy Strategy, the DEA continues to promote equitable, inclusive and sustainable economic growth and social development. The strategy has eight key pillars, namely:

- Green buildings and the built environment;
- Sustainable transport and infrastructure;
- Clean energy and energy efficiency;
- Natural resource conservation and management;
- Sustainable waste management;
- Water management;
- Sustainable consumption and production; and
- Agriculture food production and forestry.

Forestry

Forestry is one of the sectors that have a huge potential in job creation whilst ensuring the sustainable use of natural resources.

The forestry, timber, pulp, paper and furniture sector not only has the potential to create more jobs and growth in marginalised areas of South Africa.

It is also emerging as a sustainable future sector incorporating bio-refinery and transformative technologies.

The forest-based industries are no longer limited to traditional wood-processing, furniture, pulp and paper. Through nano-technology and other scientific advances, they have now progressed to providing raw material for the clothing and textiles, pharmaceuticals, rheology and food-processing sector.

The forestry industry is at continuous risks from fire, pests' diseases and drought.

In an effort to address the issue of competing land use between agriculture and forestry, the department developed a strategy on agro-forestry.

Agro-forestry is a practice that integrates forestry and agriculture on the same piece of land with socio-economic and environmental benefits. This strategy was expected to ensure household food security and increase the country's fibre.

National Arbor Week, which is celebrated annually in September, serves to promote awareness for the need to plant and maintain indigenous trees throughout South Africa. Every Arbor Week celebration highlights two specific trees – one common and one rare species. The theme for the 2019 Arbor Week Campaign was: "Forests and Sustainable Cities".

In 2018, the then Ministry of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries decided to extend Arbor Week to Arbor Month, with the campaign celebrated from 1 to 30 September annually.

The following tree species were selected as trees of the year in 2019:

- *Sclerocarya birrea*: Marula Maroela. This tree has been selected from the list of common species.
- *Philenoptera violacea*: Apple-leaf, Appelblaar. This tree has been selected from the list of rare/uncommon species.

Woodlands

Woodlands include those types ranging from wooded grasslands (between 5% and 10% tree canopy cover) to dense thickets (areas with over 75% tree canopy cover but which do not meet the other criteria required to be defined as natural forest).

The woodland, also known as savannas, constitute a forest resource of major importance in South Africa. It is the most accessible forest resource for poor communities

and contributes in the region of R2 000 to R5 000 to poor households annually. While natural forests cover less than one million ha of land in total, and plantation forestry covers less than 1,3 million ha and the woodlands collectively cover about 29 million ha to 46 million ha.

Several protected tree species of the savanna, such as camel thorn and leadwood, contribute substantially to the lucrative braai wood market, and guidelines have been set for licensing processes to assist with the control of their use.

Kathu Forest in the Northern Cape is the first woodland area to be declared protected woodland under the National Forests Act of 1998.

The woodlands are a valuable source of fuel, building material, craft timber and a variety of non-timber products. These include fruit, fodder, medicinal compounds, honey, meat and mushrooms. They form the backbone of the livelihoods of millions of people.

The wood processing sector comprises board manufacturers and manufacturers of wood-based products.

Fisheries

In September 2019, Cabinet decided to extend the time frames for dealing with the fishing rights in 12 commercial fishing sectors, which will expire on 31 December 2020.

The 12 sectors that are due for allocation in terms of Section 18 of the Marine Living Resources Act of 1998 are: KZN Prawn Trawl; Demersal Shark; Tune-Pole Line; Hake Handline; Line Fish; White Mussels; Oysters; Squid; Small Pelagics (Pilchard and Anchovy); Hake Deepsea Trawl; Hake Longline; and South Coast Rock Lobster.

The Fishing Rights Allocation Process has been extended until 31 December 2021. During this time, the DEFF is expected to conduct socio-economic impact analysis studies on the General Policy on the Allocation of Commercial Fishing Rights, as well as the 12 sector-specific policies.

Aquaculture

In South Africa, marine and freshwater aquaculture presents a good opportunity to diversify fish production to satisfy local demand; contribute to food security and nutrition, job creation, economic development and rural development, and improve export opportunities.

The sector also presents an opportunity to bring in the youth, women and historically disadvantaged people into the sector.

Aquaculture incorporates the breeding, trading or rearing of aquatic organisms in a controlled or selected aquatic environment for recreational, commercial or subsistence purposes. It is divided into fresh-water culture and mariculture.







OFFICIAL GUIDE TO
South Africa
2018/19

Health

The Department of Health (DoH) derives its mandate from the National Health Act of 2003, which requires that the department provides a framework for a structured and uniform health system for South Africa. The Act sets out the responsibilities of the three levels of government in the provision of health services.

The DoH contributes directly to the realisation of Outcome 2 (a long and healthy life for all South Africans) of government's 2014-2019 Medium Term Strategic Framework.

In line with the vision of the National Development Plan (NDP) of ensuring a long and healthy life for all South Africans, the department focuses on sustainably expanding HIV and AIDS and tuberculosis (TB) treatment and prevention, revitalising public healthcare facilities, and ensuring the provision of specialised tertiary hospital services.

The Bill of Rights in Section 27 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996 states unequivocally that access to healthcare is a basic human right.

Provincial health departments are mandated to provide healthcare services, while the role of the national department is to formulate policy, and coordinate and support provincial departments in fulfilling their mandates.

Public healthcare facilities

Statistics South Africa's (Stats SA) General Household Survey (GHS) of 2018 shows that nationally, 71,5% of households said that they would first go to public clinics, hospitals or other public institutions, while 27,1% of households said that they would first consult a private doctor, private clinic or hospital. Only 0,7% of responding households said that they would first go to a traditional healer.

The use of public health facilities was least common in Western Cape (56,1%), Free State (63,5%) and Gauteng (63,9%), and most common in Limpopo (86,1%), Eastern Cape (79,8%) and KwaZulu-Natal (79,0%).

Users of private healthcare facilities seemed to be more satisfied with those facilities than users of public healthcare facilities across all provinces. Whereas 97,6% of users were satisfied or somewhat satisfied with private facilities (92,6% were very satisfied), only 80,3% of users of public healthcare facilities were somewhat satisfied or very satisfied.

Only 53,8% of individuals that used public healthcare facilities were very satisfied.

Of those that used private healthcare facilities, households in Mpumalanga were most likely to be 'very satisfied' (95,8%) followed by households in Eastern Cape (95,5%), Western Cape (93,7%) and Gauteng (93,2%).

Households in Limpopo (72,1%) were most likely to be very satisfied with public healthcare facilities while those in North West (40,3%) were least likely to be very satisfied.

Preventing and treating communicable and non-communicable diseases

Combating HIV and AIDS remains a priority of government. The department is committed to the 90/90/90 targets of the Joint United Nations Programme on HIV and AIDS: ensuring that 90% of people living with HIV are diagnosed, 90% of those diagnosed are initiated on antiretroviral treatment, and 90% of those initiated on treatment have suppressed viral loads.

The department is expected to increase the number of people receiving antiretroviral treatment from 4.3 million in October 2018 to seven million in 2021/22, and to fund HIV-prevention interventions such as HIV counselling and testing, condom distribution and medical male circumcision.

TB is the leading underlying cause of death in South Africa and government aims to coordinate national interventions against this disease by improving its detection, treatment coverage and treatment success rate.

The department aims to eliminate malaria in South Africa by 2023/24 by scaling up cost-effective interventions for malaria prevention, surveillance, diagnosis and treatment.

In June 2019, government launched the Human Rights Plan, which has a clear roadmap on how to address human rights violations for people infected and affected by HIV and TB, and for vulnerable and marginalised populations.

The aim of the plan is to eradicate the stigma and discrimination associated with HIV and TB, and to call out the prejudice that has fuelled it.

In recognition of the pivotal role community health workers play in ensuring access to primary healthcare services in South Africa's most vulnerable communities, the community outreach services component was created in 2018/19.

The aim of this component include harmonising and standardising the training, performance monitoring and remuneration of community health workers.

Life expectancy

By 2019 life expectancy at birth is estimated at 61,5 years for males and 67,7 years for females. The infant mortality rate (IMR) has declined from an estimated 56,5 infant deaths per 1 000 live births in 2002 to 22,1 infant deaths per 1 000 live births in 2019.

Similarly, the under-five mortality rate (U5MR) declined from 79,0 child deaths per 1 000 live births to 28,5 child deaths per 1 000 live births between 2002 and 2019. The decline in the percentage of AIDS-related deaths since 2007 can be attributed to the increase in the roll-out of antiretroviral therapy (ART) over time.

The national roll-out of ART began in 2005 with a target of one service point in each of the 53 districts of South Africa at the time (later reduced to 52 districts). The estimated number of AIDS-related deaths declined consistently since 2007 from 267 417 to 126 805 AIDS-related deaths in 2019.

Access to ART has changed significantly over time, altering the pattern of mortality over time. It has extended the lifespan of many in South Africa, who would have otherwise died at an earlier age, as evidenced in the decline of AIDS-related deaths post-2006.

For 2019, an estimated 13,5% of the total population is HIV positive. Over a fifth of South African women in their reproductive ages (15-49 years) are HIV positive. HIV prevalence among the youth aged 15-24 has remained fairly stable over time. The total number of persons living with HIV in South Africa increased from an estimated 4,64 million in 2002 to 7,97 million by 2019.

Equitable access to tertiary healthcare services

Tertiary healthcare services are highly specialised, hospital-based services that require strong national coordination due to their unequal distribution across South Africa. As a result, many patients receive care in neighbouring provinces if the services they require are not available in their home province.

The DoH subsidises the country's 29 tertiary hospitals through the national tertiary services grant to ensure that provincial departments that treat patients from other provinces are adequately funded for this. It funds medical specialists, equipment, and advanced medical investigation and treatment according to approved service specifications.

National Health Insurance (NHI)

The NHI aims to ensure that all citizens and residents of South Africa, irrespective of socio-economic status, have access to good-quality health services provided by both the public and private sectors, thereby eradicating financial barriers to health care access. The NDP envisions a health system that works for everyone, produces positive health outcomes and is accessible to all.

By 2030, the NDP expects South Africa to have, among other things, raised the life expectancy of South Africans to at least 70 years; produced a generation of under-20s that is largely free of HIV; achieved an IMR of less than 20 deaths per thousand live births, including an U5MR of less than 30 per thousand; achieved a significant shift in equity, efficiency and quality of health service provision.

Potential benefits from the NHI Fund would include:

- treatment for schoolchildren with physical barriers to learning such as eyesight, hearing, speech and oral health;
- free ante-natal care in the form of eight visits to a doctor to each of the 1,2 million women who fall pregnant annually. Family planning, breast and cervical cancer screening and where appropriate, treatment, will be provided;
- better services for mental health users, such as screening;
- assistive devices for the elderly like spectacles, hearing aids and wheelchairs.

Medical schemes

Between 2002 and 2018, the percentage of individuals covered by a medical aid scheme increased marginally from 15,9% to 17,1% in 2016 before declining to 16,4% in 2018, according to Stats SA's GHS of 2018.

During this period, the number of individuals who were covered by a medical aid scheme increased from 7,3 million to 9,4 million persons.

More than one-fifth (22,6%) of South African households had at least one member who belonged to a medical aid scheme.

Approximately one-quarter (24,0%) of individuals in metros were members of medical aid schemes, exceeding the national average of 16,4%. Membership was most common in Tshwane (29,6%) and the City of Cape Town (27,7%), while the lowest membership was measured in Nelson Mandela Bay (20,6%) and eThekweni (20,7%).

A total of 72,9% of white individuals were members of a medical aid scheme compared to just over one-half (52,0%) of Indian/Asian individuals. By comparison, only 9,9% of black Africans were covered by a medical aid scheme.

By September 2019, there were over 80 medical schemes in South Africa, with over eight million beneficiaries.

Health entities

- The **Compensation Commissioner for Occupational Diseases in Mines and Works** is mandated to compensate workers and ex-workers in controlled mines and works for occupational diseases of the cardiorespiratory organs and reimburse for loss of earnings incurred during TB treatment.
- The **Council for Medical Schemes** is a regulatory authority responsible for overseeing the medical schemes industry in South Africa. Its functions include protecting the interests of beneficiaries, controlling and coordinating the functioning of medical schemes, collecting and disseminating information about private healthcare and advising the Minister of Health on any matter concerning medical schemes.
- The **Office of Health Standards Compliance** is mandated to monitor and enforce the compliance of health establishments with the norms and standards prescribed by the Minister of Health in relation to the national health system; and ensure the consideration, investigation and disposal of complaints relating to non-compliance with prescribed norms and standards in a procedurally fair, economical and expeditious manner.
- The **South African Medical Research Council** is mandated to promote the improvement of health and quality of life through research development and technology transfer. Research and innovation are primarily conducted through council funded research units located within the council and in higher education institutions.
- The **National Health Laboratory Service** is mandated to support the DoH by providing cost-effective diagnostic laboratory services to all state clinics and hospitals. It also provides health science training and education, and supports health research. It is the largest diagnostic pathology service in South Africa, servicing more than 80% of the population, through a national network of 268

laboratories. Its specialised divisions include the National Institute for Communicable Diseases, the National Institute for Occupational Health, the National Cancer Registry and the South African Vaccine Producers as its subsidiary.

- The **South African Health Products Regulatory Authority** is a public entity responsible for the regulation of medicines, medical devices and radiation control. These functions were previously performed by the Medicines Control Council.
- The **Health Professions Council of South Africa** guides and regulates the health professions in the country in aspects pertaining to registration, education and training, professional conduct and ethical behaviour, ensuring continuing professional development, and fostering compliance with healthcare standards.
- The **South African Nursing Council** sets and maintains standards of nursing education and practice in South Africa. It is an autonomous, financially independent, statutory body.
- The **South African Pharmacy Council** is an independent, self-funded, statutory body mandated to regulate the pharmacy profession in the country with powers to register pharmacy professionals and pharmacies, control of pharmaceutical education, and ensuring good pharmacy practice.
- The **South African Dental Technicians Council** is a regulatory body responsible for regulating the Dental Technology profession in South Africa.
- The **Allied Health Professions Council of South Africa** controls all allied health professions, which include Ayurveda, Chinese Medicine and Acupuncture, Chiropractic, Homeopathy, Naturopathy, Osteopathy, Phytotherapy, Therapeutic Aromatherapy, Therapeutic Massage Therapy, Therapeutic Reflexology and Unani-Tibb.
- The **Interim Traditional Health Practitioners Council** gives traditional health practitioners registered with it the authority to issue medical certificates in line with the provisions of the Basic Conditions of Employment Act of 1997.





OFFICIAL GUIDE TO
South Africa

2018/19

**Human
Settlements**

The Department of Human Settlements (DHS) derives its core mandate and responsibilities from Section 26 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996 and Section 3 of the Housing Act of 1997, read in conjunction with approved policies and chapter 8 of the National Development Plan (NDP).

This allows the DHS, in collaboration with provinces and municipalities, to establish and facilitate a sustainable national housing development process. The department does this by: determining national policy and national norms and standards for housing and human settlements development; setting broad national housing delivery goals, and monitoring the financial and non-financial performance of provinces and municipalities against these goals.

In executing these roles and responsibilities, the department also builds capacity for provinces and municipalities, and promotes consultation with all stakeholders in the housing-delivery chain, including civil society and the private sector.

The DHS is committed to the NDP's vision of transforming human settlements and the spatial economy to create more functionally integrated, balanced and vibrant urban settlements by 2030.

Outcome 8 (sustainable human settlements and improved quality of household life) of government's 2014-2019 Medium Term Strategic Framework is aligned with this vision and guides the work of the department, as well as its commitment to improving institutional capacity and coordination across government.

The NDP sets out a human settlements trajectory proposition that, 'by 2050 visible results from effectively coordinated spatial planning systems shall have transformed human settlements in South Africa into equitable and efficient spaces with citizens living in close proximity to work with access to social facilities and essential infrastructure'.

According to Statistics South Africa's (Stats SA) General Household Survey (GHS) of 2018, about 81,1% of all households resided in formal dwellings in 2018.

Although the percentage of households that have received some kind of government subsidy to access housing has increased from 5,6% in 2002 to 13,6% by 2018, 13,1% of households were still living in informal dwellings. This could be attributed to the fact that rapid household growth and population relocation is making it very difficult to address existing backlogs in the face of fresh demands.

Towards integrated human settlements

The DHS's ongoing policy review seeks to reinforce the shift from housing to human settlements, as envisaged in the Breaking New Ground strategy and chapter 8 of the NDP. The emphasis is on creating integrated, mixed-use, mixed-income developments that support densification and the development of transport-oriented corridors, and provide access to housing, and social and economic amenities.

Providing integrated human settlements also entails increasing access to and delivering adequate housing and housing services in high quality living environments, providing affordable rental housing and state-subsidised units, delivering title deeds, and providing temporary shelter for housing-related emergencies, among other interventions.

Housing entities

The department's housing entities include the:

- **National Home Builders Registration Council (NHBRC)**, which represents the interests of housing consumers by providing warranty protection against defined defects in new homes and to regulate the home building industry. The NHBRC also provides training and capacity building to promote and ensure compliance with technical standards in the home-building environment.
- **Community Schemes Ombud Service**, which provides a dispute-resolution service for community schemes; monitors and controls the quality of all governance documentation relating to sectional title schemes; and takes custody of, preserves and provides public access to scheme governance documentation.
- **Estate Agency Affairs Board**, which regulates, maintains and promotes the conduct of estate agents; issues certificates from the Estate Agents Fidelity Fund; prescribes the standard of education and training for estate agents; investigates complaints lodged against estate agents, and manages and controls the Estate Agents Fidelity Fund.
- **Housing Development Agency**, which identifies, acquires, holds, develops and releases state-owned and privately owned land for residential and community purposes; and project manages housing developments for the creation of sustainable human settlements.
- **National Housing Finance Corporation (NHFC)** – In October 2018, the Rural Housing Loan Fund (which

facilitates access to housing credit to low income rural households by providing wholesale finance through a network of retail intermediaries and community-based organisations) and the National Urban Reconstruction and Housing Agency (which provides bridging finance to contractors building low to moderate income housing, infrastructure and community facilities) merged with the NHFC to achieve improved efficiencies, economies of scale and a more sustainable housing finance model. This was the first step towards establishing a new, consolidated finance institution for the development of human settlements. The institution was expected to be formally established over the medium-term period, and was expected to support broader funding in the human settlements value chain.

- **Social Housing Regulatory Authority**, which regulates the social housing sector, and ensures a sustainable and regulated flow of investment into the social housing sector in order to support the restructuring of urban spaces by providing capital grant to accredited social housing institutions.

Subsidies

A housing subsidy is a grant by government to qualifying beneficiaries for housing purposes. One of the DHS areas of responsibility in the delivery of human settlements relates to the bottom-most end of the market, where it provides housing subsidies to the poor. This is where the bulk of the housing backlog exists, affecting mainly those who earn below R3 500 a month.

According to Stats SA's GHS of 2018, the percentage of households that received some form of government housing subsidy increased from 5,6% in 2002 to 13,6% in 2018.

A slightly higher percentage of female-headed households (17,4%) than male-headed household (11,0%) received subsidies. This is in line with government policies that give preference to households headed by individuals from vulnerable groups, including females, and individuals with disabilities.

Government Employees Housing Scheme (GEHS)

The GEHS was established in 2015/16 to assist public service officials on salary levels 1 to 10 with collateral for access to

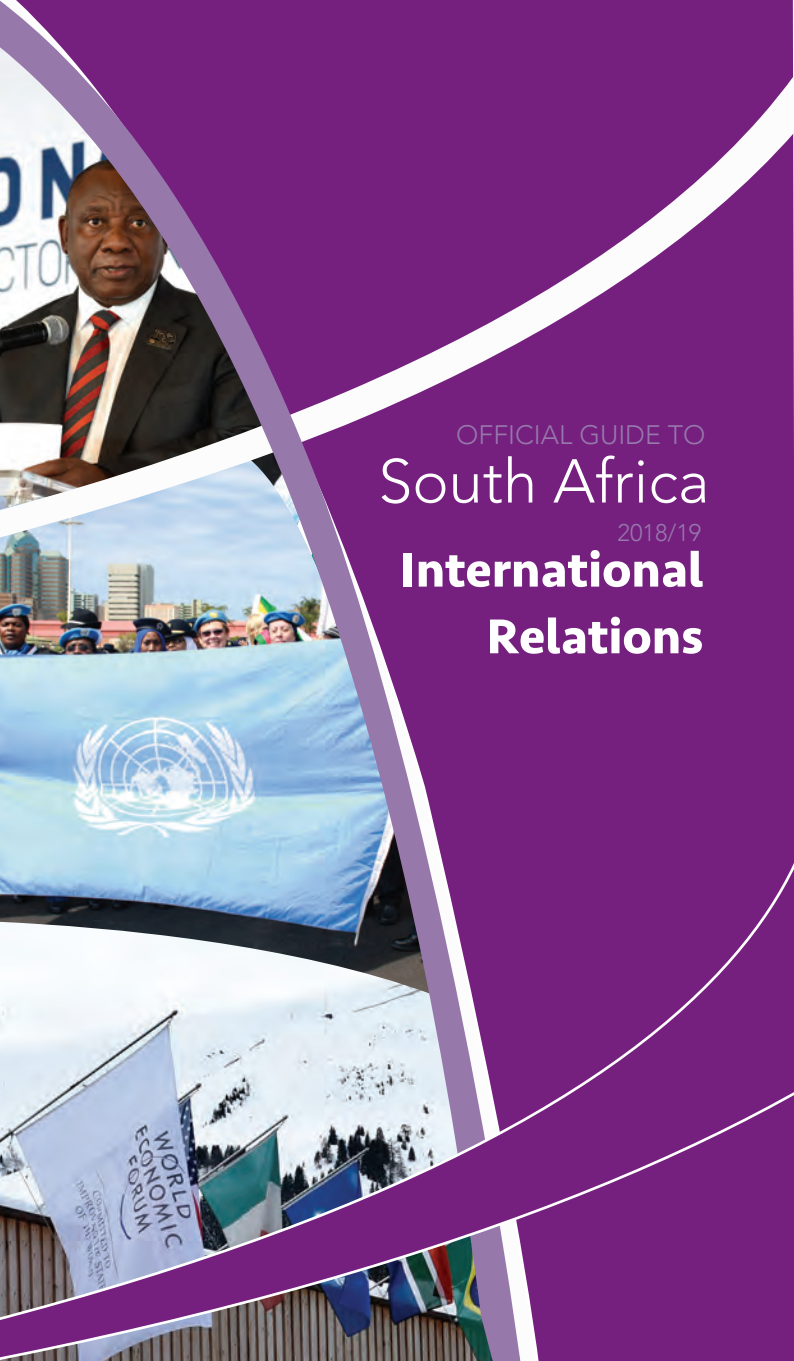
home loans and home ownership.

The objective of the scheme is to:

- support, educate and advice employees on housing options and opportunities;
- enhance employees access to affordable housing;
- promote home ownership and facilitate asset security among employees;
- assist employees to access affordable housing loans and finance;
- assist employees to rent houses with a view to buy and own homes; and
- provide transitional arrangements towards the GEHS.







OFFICIAL GUIDE TO
South Africa
2018/19
**International
Relations**

In terms of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996, the President is ultimately responsible for the foreign policy and international relations of South Africa.

As such, it is the President's prerogative to appoint heads of mission, receive foreign heads of mission, conduct state-to-state relations, and negotiate and sign all international agreements.

International agreements that are not of a technical, administrative or executive nature will only bind the country after being approved by Parliament, which also approves the country's ratification of or accession to multilateral agreements. All international agreements must be tabled in Parliament for information purposes.

The Minister of International Relations and Cooperation is entrusted with the formulation, promotion, execution and daily conduct of South Africa's foreign policy.

The department's overall mandate is to work for the realisation of South Africa's foreign policy objectives by:

- coordinating and aligning South Africa's international relations;
- monitoring developments in the international environment;
- communicating government's policy positions;
- developing and advising government on policy options, and creating mechanisms and avenues for achieving objectives;
- protecting South Africa's sovereignty and territorial integrity;
- contributing to the creation of an enabling international environment for South African businesses;
- sourcing developmental assistance; and
- assisting South African citizens abroad.

The Department of International Relations and Cooperation's (DIRCO) strategic objectives are to:

- protect and promote South African national interests and values through bilateral and multilateral interactions;
- conduct and coordinate South Africa's international relations and promote its foreign policy objectives;
- monitor international developments and advise government on foreign policy and related domestic matters;
- contribute to the formulation of international law and enhance respect for its provisions;
- promote multilateralism to secure a rules-based international system;
- maintain a modern, effective department driven to pursue excellence; and

- provide a world-class and uniquely South African state protocol service.

Chapter 7 of the National Development Plan (NDP) details a vision for positioning South Africa to facilitate broad-based socioeconomic development and foster strong international ties.

Outcome 11 (create a better South Africa, a better Africa and a better world) of government's 2014-2019 Medium Term Strategic Framework gives expression to this, and is directly aligned with the work of the DIRCO.

The department pursues regional political and economic integration, promotes Africa's development through sustained South-South solidarity and mutually beneficial relations with the North, and engages in multilateral systems and processes of global governance in advancing South Africa's foreign policy priorities.

Over the medium term, the department will focus on: recalibrating South Africa's foreign policy and services; strengthening African cooperation and regional integration; consolidating global economic, political and social relations; and developing and managing infrastructure projects and properties.

The department realises its mandate mainly through the 125 diplomatic missions in 108 countries in which South Africa has representation.

Recalibrating South Africa's foreign policy and services

South Africa's foreign policy is formulated and executed in a global environment that is constantly evolving. It therefore requires frequent recalibration through comprehensive reviews of various foreign policy levers, tools and instruments to remain relevant and in line with the department's mandate.

To this end, in 2018/19, the Minister of International Relations and Cooperation established the Foreign Policy Review Panel and convened the inaugural Foreign Policy Review Workshop to begin the process of reassessing South Africa's foreign policy.

The panel's work over the MTEF period was expected to provide strategic guidance and recommendations on rationalising foreign missions.

Strengthening African cooperation and regional integration

The integration of the Southern African Development Community (SADC) remains critical for the region's economic development and for South Africa's global competitiveness.

The revised Regional Indicative Strategic Development Plan 2015-2020 and the Industrialisation Strategy and Roadmap 2015-2063 are the key blueprints in place for this.

A renewed focus on industrialisation emerged from the 38th Ordinary Summit of SADC Heads of State and Government, held in 2018, and will guide the department's priorities in leading the implementation and domestication of the region's blueprints over the medium term.

South Africa will continue to participate in the SADC double troika leadership oversight structure, and monitor the implementation of SADC summit decisions and resolutions in advancing political and economic integration.

The department continues to play an active role in African Union (AU) structures and processes for the advancement of peace and security; and conflict prevention, resolution and management on the continent.

This includes the strengthening of mechanisms to consolidate peace and prevent post-conflict countries, such as Libya and South Sudan, from backsliding into civil unrest.

Consolidating global economic, political and social relations

The DIRCO continues to focus on consolidating economic, political and social relations through structured bilateral mechanisms and high-level engagements to promote national priorities.

As the current chair of the Indian Ocean Rim Association, South Africa will advocate for the restructuring of the global political, economic and financial architecture to be more balanced, representative, inclusive and equitable; and ensure that the international system rests on the important pillars of multilateralism and international law.

In 2019, South Africa assumed tenure as a non-permanent member of the United Nations (UN) Security Council, and was expected to use this membership to promote international peace and security through advocating for peaceful dispute resolution and inclusive dialogue; and enhance cooperation

and improve efficiency between the UN, the AU and other regional and subregional organisations.

In support of South Africa's economic growth, in 2019/20, the department was expected to undertake 112 economic diplomacy initiatives on trade and investment, and 126 engagements with chambers of commerce.

It also planned to continue strengthening South Africa's bilateral relations, with a stronger emphasis on economic partnerships in line with economic growth imperatives.

Developing and managing infrastructure projects and properties

The department has a property portfolio consisting of 163 state-owned properties and about 1 000 rented properties.

Over the medium term, the department planned to focus on increasing maintenance of its current ageing state-owned properties as well as renovations in Namibia, Eswatini, Brasilia and the Hague. In addition, feasibility studies would be undertaken to prioritise new developments in areas where land is owned such as in India, Saudi Arabia, Senegal and South Sudan.

Foreign policy

South Africa's foreign policy outlook is based on its commitment to the values and ideals of Pan-Africanism, solidarity with people of the South and the need to cooperate with all peace-loving people across the globe in pursuit of shared prosperity and a just, equitable and rules-based international order.

The country's diplomacy of Ubuntu continues to place cooperation with partners as the thrust of its foreign policy endeavours above all forms of competition.

South Africa strives to address its domestic imperatives as enunciated in the NDP and national interest while taking into cognisance the needs and aspirations of others.

The country's diplomatic efforts over the past two decades include conflict resolution, prevention, mediation, peacekeeping and peacebuilding.

- **Africa** embraces relevant national priorities by strengthening bilateral cooperation with countries in Africa, particularly through focusing on increasing exports of South African goods and services, FDI with technology transfers into value adding industries and mineral beneficiation,

and inbound tourism and the skills base. South Africa has foreign representation in 47 diplomatic missions in Africa.

- **Asia and Middle East** embraces relevant national priorities by strengthening bilateral cooperation with countries in Asia and the Middle East, particularly through focusing on increasing exports of South African goods and services, FDI with technology transfers into value adding industries and mineral beneficiation, and inbound tourism and the skills base. South Africa has foreign representation in 32 diplomatic missions in Asia and the Middle East.
- **Americas and Caribbean** embraces relevant national priorities by strengthening bilateral cooperation with countries in the Americas and Caribbean, particularly through focusing on increasing exports of South African goods and services, FDI with technology transfers into value adding industries and mineral beneficiation, and inbound tourism and the skills base. South Africa foreign representation in 16 diplomatic missions in the Americas and Caribbean.
- **Europe** embraces relevant national priorities by strengthening bilateral cooperation with countries in Europe, particularly through focusing on increasing exports of South African goods and services, FDI with technology transfers into value adding industries and mineral beneficiation, and inbound tourism and the skills base. South Africa has foreign representation in 28 diplomatic missions in Europe.

Strengthening regional integration and the African Agenda

The DIRCO uses the NDP as an overarching vision for guiding South Africa's foreign policy and international relations programme.

Chapter 7 of the NDP emphasises the importance of regional integration, specifically in the SADC, which is South Africa's largest trade partner in Africa.

The country has also been unrelenting in relation to fostering peace as well as postconflict reconstruction and development in countries like the Democratic Republic of Congo, Burundi and South Sudan. In essence, whether involved within the UN and/or its specialised agencies or, in bodies like the G20, G77, IBSA or BRICS, South Africa steadfastly advances the African Agenda.

The country wholly identifies with the aspirations of Agenda 2063 of the AU and its vision of 'an integrated, prosperous and peaceful Africa, driven by its own citizens and representing a dynamic force in the international arena'. South Africa and its fortunes are inextricably linked to those of the continent. Accordingly, South Africa is fully behind the African Agenda 2063 and its Action Plan.

Disarmament, non-proliferation and arms control

A primary goal of South Africa's policy on disarmament, non-proliferation and arms control includes reinforcing and promoting the country as a responsible producer, possessor and trader of defence-related products and advanced technologies.

In this regard, the DIRCO continues to promote the benefits that disarmament, non-proliferation and arms control hold for international peace and security.

As a member of the supplier's regimes and of the Africa Group and the Non-Aligned Movement (NAM), the importance of non-proliferation is promoted, taking into account that export controls should not become the means whereby developing countries are denied access to advanced technologies required for their development.

On 25 February 2019, South Africa joined a growing number of states in submitting its Instrument of Ratification of the Treaty on the Prohibition of Nuclear Weapons (TPNW) to the UN in New York.

The TPNW seeks to establish an international norm, delegitimising and stigmatising the possession of nuclear weapons. It aims to contribute towards achieving the objective set out in the very first resolution adopted by the UN General Assembly (UNGA) in 1946 to eliminate all weapons of mass destruction.

It complements other international instruments by contributing towards fulfilling the nuclear disarmament obligations under the Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty, the objectives of the Comprehensive Nuclear Test-Ban Treaty and the various nuclear-weapon-free-zone treaties, such as the Pelindaba Treaty that already banned nuclear weapons in Africa.

African Union

The AU is a continental body consisting of the 55 member states that make up the countries of the African Continent. It was officially launched in Durban in 2002 as a successor to the Organisation of African Unity (OAU). At the 2019 AU Summit, South Africa was elected to chair the AU in 2020.

Africa Day

Africa Day is celebrated annually on 25 May within the African continent to mark the formation of the OAU on 25 May 1963 and the AU in 2002, as well as chart the progress made by the continent since then to advance democracy, peace, stability and socio-economic development.

South Africa marked Africa Month 2019 under the theme “Celebrating 25 Years of Democracy: Building a Better Africa and a Better World”. The month was an opportunity to promote African unity, deeper regional integration and recommit Africa to a common destiny.

South Africa plays an active role as an integral part of the African continent. The country’s national interest is intrinsically linked to continental stability, unity and prosperity of Africa.

New Partnership for Africa’s Development

NEPAD is a socio-economic flagship programme of the AU. NEPAD’s four primary objectives are to eradicate poverty, promote sustainable growth and development, integrate Africa in the world economy and accelerate the empowerment of women.

NEPAD facilitates and coordinates the development of continent-wide programmes and projects, mobilises resources and engages the global community, Regional Economic Communities and member states in the implementation of these programmes and projects.

International bodies

Brazil, Russia, India, China and South Africa

South Africa assumed the rotational Chairship of BRICS on 1 January 2018 and successfully hosted the 10th BRICS Summit in Johannesburg from 25 to 27 July 2018, under the theme: “BRICS in Africa: Collaboration for Inclusive Growth and Shared Prosperity in the 4th Industrial Revolution.”

India, Brazil and South Africa (IBSA)

The IBSA Dialogue Forum brings together three large pluralistic, multicultural and multiracial societies from three continents as a purely South-South grouping of like-minded countries committed to inclusive sustainable development, in pursuit of the well-being of their peoples and those of the developing world.

The principles, norms and values underpinning the IBSA Dialogue Forum are participatory democracy, respect for human rights, the Rule of Law and the strengthening of multilateralism.

UNGA and UNSC

In September 2018, President Cyril Ramaphosa participated for the first time in the General Debate of the 73rd Session of the UNGA7, under the theme: “Making the UN Relevant to All People: Global Leadership and Shared Responsibilities for Peaceful, Equitable and Sustainable Societies”.

The President’s programme commenced with the unveiling of a life-size statue of former President Nelson Mandela at the UN Headquarters. Also convened in honour of the centenary of the birth of President Mandela was the UN Nelson Mandela Peace Summit.

South Africa has been elected to serve on the UNSC from January 2019 to December 2020. This is South Africa’s third term on the UNSC, having previously served in 2007 to 2008 and 2011 to 2012. South Africa’s tenure on the Security Council will be dedicated to the legacy of former President Nelson Mandela and his commitment to peace.

South Africa will also use its experience in the prioritisation of diplomacy, mediation, the pacific settlement of disputes, conflict resolution and peacebuilding through inclusive dialogue and negotiations with the ultimate aim of supporting parties to achieve sustainable peace, national unity and reconciliation.

It will also actively contribute to achieving a Africa at peace by 2063 by pursuing and promoting Africa’s goal of “Silencing the Guns in Africa by 2020”, but also to promote and achieve peace in all the regions of the world.

In continuing its legacy from the two previous terms on the UNSC, South Africa will advocate for closer cooperation between the UNSC and the AU Peace and Security Council.

Commonwealth

The modern Commonwealth is a voluntary association of 53 independent member countries. Membership is diverse and includes both developed and developing countries in Africa, Asia, the Americas, the Caribbean, Europe and the South Pacific.

Since rejoining the Commonwealth in 1994, South Africa has interacted closely with the work of the Commonwealth contributing politically, financially and in terms of capacity and expertise to the work of the organisation.

Non-Aligned Movement

The NAM, consisting of 120 members, was chaired by the Bolivarian Republic of Venezuela until 2019. It is the largest political grouping of countries outside the UN, making it an important lobby group of developing countries in global affairs.

South Africa formally joined the movement in 1994 and has played a leading role in NAM deliberations and meetings ever since.

Group of Twenty (G20)

South Africa has been a permanent member of the G20 since its inception in 1999 following the Asian financial crises.

The G20 was established to increase multilateral cooperation for the recovery of the global economy, to bring stability to the global financial system, to promote long-term sustainable growth and to strengthen global economic governance.

The G20 economies account for 85% of the global Gross Domestic Product, 80% of world trade and two-thirds of the world's population.

South Africa also works together closely with the following international bodies and organisations to ensure that it benefits from trade, investment, industrialisation and innovation to address the triple challenges of poverty, inequality and unemployment, as espoused in the NDP:

- World Trade Organisation.
- World Economic Forum.
- Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development.
- International Labour Organisation.
- World Intellectual Property Organisation.

World Health Organisation (WHO)

South Africa is one of the 194 member states that constitute the WHO. The country takes part in the annual World Health Assembly (WHA), which is the WHO's supreme decision-making body.

South Africa also participates in the WHO's annual Regional Committee for Africa, which reflects on the decisions taken at the WHA, particularly those relevant to the continent.

Through its participation in these structures, South Africa contributes to setting international norms and standards on key issues regarding global and public health such as:

- the implementation of the International Health Regulations
- addressing antimicrobial resistance
- the fight against HIV and AIDS, tuberculosis and malaria
- building resilient healthcare systems in developing states
- ensuring access to medicines
- achieving Universal Health Coverage (National Health Insurance in South Africa)
- contributing to economic growth through health employment.

New Development Bank (NDB)

The purpose of the NDB is to mobilise resources for infrastructure and sustainable development projects in BRICS and other emerging market economies, and developing countries, to complement the existing efforts of multilateral and regional financial institutions for global growth and development.

In April 2019, the NDB approved loans for three projects in South Africa, including funding Eskom to stabilise the national electricity grid.

The NDB was also expected to provide infrastructure and sustainable development project funding to countries that are not members of the BRICS.







OFFICIAL GUIDE TO
South Africa
2018/19

**Justice and
Correctional
Services**



Justice

The responsibilities of both the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development (DoJ&CD) and the Department of Correctional Services (DCS) are to ensure a just, peaceful and safe society.

Department of Justice and Constitutional Development

The DoJ&CD derives its mandate from a number of acts, in addition to the mandate it derives from the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996. These Acts and the constitutional framework assign functions to the department, such as the:

- establishment and functioning of magistrates' courts and Specialised Courts;
- appointment of judges and other judicial officers, their conditions of service, discipline and training;
- establishment and functioning of the National Prosecuting Authority (NPA), the Special Investigating Unit (SIU) and the Asset Forfeiture Unit (AFU),
- conduct of criminal proceedings, the investigation of organised crime and corruption, and the forfeiture of assets obtained through illicit means;
- establishment and functioning of bodies responsible for legal aid, law reform and rule making;
- appointment of masters of the high courts and the administration of the Guardian's Fund and deceased and insolvent estates; the regulation and provisioning of legal advisory services to government departments; the promotion, protection and enforcement of certain human rights; the protection of vulnerable groups; and support to Chapter 9 institutions.

Chapter 12 of the National Development Plan sets out a vision for building safer communities in South Africa through, among other things, strengthening the criminal justice system. This vision is expressed in terms of Outcome 3 (all people in South Africa are and feel safe) of government's 2014-2019 Medium Term Strategic Framework, with which the work of the DoJ&CD is closely aligned.

The onus is on the department to ensure that courts function appropriately so that civil, family law and criminal cases are resolved efficiently, and that the state is given access to adequate and cost-effective legal advice and services.

Over the medium term, the department was expected to focus on expediting justice by increasing access to courts, improving criminal justice business processes by modernising and integrating information systems, and strengthening the state's capability to manage litigation by transforming state legal services.

Increasing access to courts

The DoJ&CD leads a number of ongoing projects to increase access to justice services in previously marginalised communities. The Mpumalanga High Court in Mbombela was completed by mid-2019 at a total cost of R1.2 billion.

Additional court infrastructure projects are expected to be completed in 2019/20 in Chatsworth and Port Shepstone (KwaZulu-Natal); Cape Town and Plettenberg Bay (Western Cape); Booyens (Gauteng); Bityi and Dimbaza (Eastern Cape); Fraserburg (Northern Cape); and Welkom (Free State).

The additional courts will be supplemented by aligning the districts and jurisdiction of magistrate's courts with municipal boundaries to ensure that all people have equitable access to justice, wherever they live.

Improving criminal justice business processes

The department leads the implementation of the integrated justice system programme in the justice, crime prevention and security cluster. The objective of this programme is to digitise and integrate criminal justice business processes, from the reporting of a crime to the release of a convicted person from correctional services, through technology solutions, and to manage the exchange of related interdepartmental information across the criminal justice system.

In recent years, as part of the integrated justice system programme, the department has recorded significant progress in the development of electronic systems to share docket and case information.

This includes associated notifications when dockets are ready, docket requests, electronic charge sheets and the sharing of case outcomes, all enabled by a transversal hub that connects seven national departments and organisations.

Key projects still to be delivered over the medium term include an automated biometric information system to replace

the current fingerprint identification system, linked to the Department of Home Affairs; and an electronic filing system for superior courts, linked to the Office of the Chief Justice.

Transforming state legal services

One of the DoJCD's key initiatives is to re-engineer the manner in which state legal services are delivered across government and addressing organisational challenges pertaining to state attorneys.

This transformation entails finalising policies aimed at lowering the cost of litigation for the state, establishing the state's capacity to handle complex legal matters, and ensuring the efficient management of the offices of the state attorney.

Policies to drive this transformation (on mediation, state representation, the management of state litigation and tariffs) have been developed and are expected to be submitted to Cabinet for endorsement in 2019/20, as well as a proposal for the establishment of state legal services as a government component.

Office of the Chief Justice (OCJ)

The OCJ was established in August 2010 to:

- ensure that the Chief Justice can properly execute the mandate as both the head of the Constitutional Court and the head of the Judiciary;
- enhance the institutional, administrative and financial independence of the OCJ; and
- improve organisational governance and accountability, and the effective and efficient use of resources.

The courts

Constitutional Court

On December 2012, the Constitution 17th Amendment Act was passed into law and it entrenched the Constitutional Court as the highest court in the land and its decisions cannot be changed by any other court.

The Constitutional Court is housed in an acclaimed building at Constitution Hill and it is presided over by 11 judges who stand guard over the Constitution and protect everyone's human rights.

When a person, an organisation or a company is not satisfied with any decision of the High Court on any matter; they can approach the Constitutional Court for a review of that decision.

Normal appeal matters are however dealt with at the Supreme Court of Appeal (SCA).

Supreme Court of Appeal

The SCA, situated in Bloemfontein in the Free State, has Jurisdiction to hear and determine an appeal any decision of a High Court. Except for the Constitutional Court, no other court can change a decision of the SCA. Only the SCA can change one of its own decisions. The SCA consists of a President, Deputy President and 23 permanently appointed judges.

High courts

The High Court handles any case which exceeds the jurisdiction of the Magistrates' Court or when a person or organisation goes to the court to change a decision of a Magistrates' Court, which means appealing a case.

Cases of the High Court are listened to by one Judge, meaning a person with many years of practical experience. However, if it is a case on appeal, then at least two Judges must hear the case.

Sometimes if the case is about a very serious crime then a Judge and two experienced people in law who are usually advocates or Magistrates who have retired, will listen to the case.

The two people are called assessors. The assessors usually help the Judge to make a decision. The High Court divisions have "jurisdiction" – the right to hear a case – over defined provincial areas in which they are situated, and the decisions of the High Court are binding on Magistrates' courts within their areas of jurisdiction.

They usually only hear civil matters involving more than R100 000, and serious criminal cases. They also hear any appeals or reviews from lower courts (Magistrates' courts) which fall in their geographical jurisdiction. The High Court usually hears any matter involving a person's status such as adoption and insolvency.

There are 14 high courts: the Eastern Cape High courts in Grahamstown, Port Elizabeth, Mthatha and Bhisho; the Free State High Court in Bloemfontein; the North Gauteng High Court in Pretoria; the South Gauteng High Court in Johannesburg; the KwaZulu-Natal High courts in Pietermaritzburg and Durban; the Limpopo High Court in Thohoyandou; the Northern Cape High Court, Kimberley;

the North West High Court, Mafikeng; and the Western Cape High Court in Cape Town and Mpumalanga High Court in Mbombela.

The following specialist high courts exercise national jurisdiction:

- The Labour Court and Labour Appeal Court in Braamfontein, Gauteng, which adjudicate over labour disputes and hear labour appeals, respectively.
- The Land Claims Court, in Randburg, Gauteng, which hears matters on the restitution of land rights that people lost after 1913 as a result of racially discriminatory land laws.
- The Competition Appeal Court, situated in Cape Town, which deals with appeals from the Competition Tribunal.
- The Electoral Court, situated in Bloemfontein, which sits mainly during elections to deal with associated disputes.
- The Tax Court, situated in Pretoria, which deals with tax-related matters, including non-compliance with tax obligations.

Regional courts

Regional courts are established largely in accordance with provincial boundaries with a regional court division for each province to hear matters within their jurisdiction. By mid-2019, there were more than 2 147 district and regional courts throughout the country.

Magistrates' courts

Magistrates' courts are the lower courts which deal with less serious criminal and civil cases. They are divided into Regional courts and District courts. In Criminal courts, the State prosecutes people for breaking the law. Criminal courts can be divided into two groups: Regional Magistrates' Courts and Ordinary Magistrates' Courts (also called District Courts). Currently, Regional Magistrates' Courts only deal with criminal cases whereas the District Magistrates' Courts deal with criminal and civil cases.

The Magistrate makes the decisions in a Magistrates' Court; sometimes with the support of lay assessors. Magistrates' Courts can be divided into either criminal courts or civil courts.

The Regional Magistrates' Courts deal with more serious cases than the ordinary Magistrates' Courts such as murder, rape, armed robbery and serious assault.

In terms of the Criminal Law (Sentencing) Amendment Act of 2007, a Regional Magistrates' Court can sentence a person who has been found guilty of offences that include murder or rape to imprisonment for life.

The court can also sentence people who have been found guilty of certain offences such as armed robbery or stealing a motor vehicle to prison for a period up to 20 years. A Regional Magistrates' Court can impose a maximum fine of R300 000.

Regional courts now have civil jurisdiction to the extent that divorce matters can now be heard there. District courts try the less serious cases. They cannot try cases of murder, treason, rape, terrorism, or sabotage.

They can sentence a person to a maximum of three years in prison or a maximum fine of R100 000. Ordinary Magistrates' Courts can hear civil cases when the claims are for less than R100 000. They cannot deal with certain matters such as divorces, arguments about a person's will and matters where it is asked if a person is mentally sane or not.

Small Claims Courts

Small Claims Courts offer members of the public a quicker and easier way of resolving disputes that involve amounts limited to R15 000 and they can do so without the need for a legal representative.

Equality courts

Equality courts are courts designed to deal with matters covered by the Promotion of Equality and Prevention of Unfair Discrimination Act of 2000, also known as the Equality Act. Members of the public bring to the court matters such as unfair discrimination, harassment, hate speech and the publication of information that discriminates unfairly.

Community courts

Community courts, such as the Hatfield Community Court in Pretoria, are normal district magistrates' courts that assist in dealing with matters in partnership with the community and business. These courts focus on restorative justice processes, such as diverting young offenders into suitable programmes.

Traditional courts

There are traditional courts (formerly chiefs' courts) established at traditional community areas in rural villages.

Sexual offences courts

The courts feature specially trained officials, procedures and equipment to reduce the chance of secondary trauma for victims.

National Register for Sex Offenders (NRSO)

The NRSO is a record of names of those found guilty of sexual offences against children and mentally disabled people.

The register gives employers in the public or private sectors such as schools, crèches and hospitals the right to check that the person being hired is fit to work with children or mentally disabled people.

National Child Protection Register

In terms of Section 126 of the Children's Act of 2005, employers offering services which allow for access to children must, before employing a person, establish from the Registrar of the National Child Protection Register whether or not the potential employee's name is on Part B of the National Child Protection Register.

If the potential employee's name appears on the register, he or she will not be allowed to work in an environment which allows for access to children, since persons whose names appear on the register have been found unsuitable to work with children by the court.

Maintenance

Maintenance is the obligation to provide another person, for example a minor, with housing, food, clothing, education and medical care, or with the means that are necessary for providing the person with these essentials.

As part of further improving the maintenance system, the Maintenance Amendment Act of 2015 was enacted to ensure that every child receives the appropriate parental care, basic nutrition, shelter, basic healthcare services, education and other related support. The amendment also ensures the blacklisting of defaulters.

Domestic violence

Domestic violence means any physical abuse, sexual abuse, emotional, verbal and psychological abuse, economic abuse, intimidation, harassment, stalking, damage to property, trespassing where the parties do not share the same residence or any other controlling or abusive behaviour towards a complainant, where such conduct harms or may cause imminent harm to the safety, health or wellbeing of the complainant.

To curb gender-based violence (GBV), government has adopted a zero-tolerance towards rape, violation of the rights of lesbian, gay, bisexual, trans-gender and intersex people, and other forms of violence towards women and children.

Human trafficking

Human trafficking has become a focus of attention in the country following the introduction of the new visa requirements for children travelling through South Africa's ports of entry. Legislation aimed at preventing trafficking defines trafficking to include the recruitment, transportation, sale or harbour of people by means of force, deceit, the abuse of vulnerability and the abuse of power for exploitation.

Drug abuse

To curb the growing abuse of drugs, the DoJ&CD has amended Schedules 1 and 2 of the Drugs and Drug Trafficking Act of 1992 to make the use and possession of drugs such as *nyaope* (also known as *woonga* or *wunga*) a criminal offence.

The use, possession and sale of dependence-producing drugs is strictly prohibited and punishable in South Africa. If convicted, a fine and/or imprisonment period of up to 15 years can be imposed. Selling or dealing in *nyaope* is punishable with a fine and/or imprisonment for a period of up to 25 years.

Role players

Legal Aid South Africa (Legal Aid SA)

Legal Aid SA provides legal aid or makes legal aid available to indigent persons within the budget allocated to it by the State.

Legal Aid SA has introduced a "Please Call Me" service through which members of the public send a "Please Call Me" text message and a legal advisor returns the call at no cost to the sender.

The institution has also established a social media presence on Facebook, Twitter and Instagram.

Special Investigating Unit

The SIU works closely with the NPA to ensure that prosecutions take place as soon as possible. It also works with the AFU in cases where the powers of this unit are more suitable for recovering the proceeds of crime.

National Prosecuting Authority

The NPA structure includes the National Prosecutions Service (NPS), the Witness-Protection Programme, the AFU and units such as the Sexual Offences and Community Affairs (SOCA) Unit, the Specialised Commercial Crime Unit (SCCU) and the Priority Crimes Litigation Unit.

Asset Forfeiture Unit

The AFU can seize and forfeit property that was bought from the proceeds of crime, or property that was used to commit a crime.

The family advocate

The role of the Family Advocate is to promote and protect the best interests of the children in civil disputes over parental rights and responsibilities.

Sexual Offences and Community Affairs Unit

The SOCA acts against the victimisation of vulnerable groups, mainly women and children. One of the unit's key achievements in ensuring government's commitment to the fight against sexual offences and GBV is the establishment of Thuthuzela Care Centres (TCCs).

The TCC concept is recognised by the UN General Assembly as a "world best-practice model" in the field of gender-violence management and response. The TCCs are one-stop facilities located in public hospitals that aim to provide survivors with a broad range of essential services – from emergency medical-care counselling to court preparation – in a holistic, integrated and victim-friendly manner.

The Thuthuzela Project is supported by the roll-out of victim support rooms in an effort to show empathy to victims of violent crime, especially in cases of sexual offences, child abuse and domestic violence.

Family violence, child protection and sexual offences units (FCS)

The FCS units operate in all South African Police Service clusters across the country. To give further impetus to the investigation of crimes of this nature, forensic social workers were appointed to assist in cases of child sexual abuse by conducting forensic assessments, compiling court reports and providing expert evidence in court.

Priority Crimes Litigation Unit (PCLU)

The PCLU is a specialist unit mandated to tackle cases that threaten national security.

The PCLU was created by presidential proclamation and is allocated categories of cases either by the President or by the National Director.

National Prosecutions Service

A significant majority of the NPA's prosecutors are housed in the NPS, the organisation's biggest unit. The NPS is headed by the Deputy Director of Public Prosecutions (DPPs). They head the respective regional jurisdictions, which are attached to the high courts of the country. All the public prosecutors and state advocates manning the district, regional and high courts report to the DPPs in their respective areas of jurisdiction.

Specialised Commercial Crime Unit

The SCCU's mandate is to effectively prosecute complex commercial crime cases emanating from the commercial branches of the SAPS. The client base of the unit comprises a broad spectrum of complainants in commercial cases, ranging from private individuals and corporate bodies to state departments.

Public Protector

The PP investigates complaints from the public or on own initiative against government at any level, its officials, persons performing public functions, corporations or companies where the State and statutory councils are involved. The PP's services are free and available to everyone.

Complainants' names are kept confidential as far as possible. The President appoints the PP on recommendation of the National Assembly and in terms of the Constitution, for

a non-renewable period of seven years.

The PP is subject only to the Constitution and the law, and functions independently from government and any political party. No person or organ of State may interfere with the functioning of the PP. The PP has the power to report a matter to Parliament, which will debate it and ensure that the PP's recommendations are followed.

Department of Correctional Services

The DCS remains committed to placing humane and safe detention and rehabilitation at the centre of service delivery. In doing so, the department strives to promote corrections as a societal responsibility, contributing to enhanced public safety and reducing re-offending.

The DCS has various offender rehabilitation programmes which focus on restorative justice, skilling, training, reading and offender reintegration.

The strategic goals of the department are to ensure that:

- the efficiency of the justice system is improved through the effective management of remand processes;
- society is protected through incarcerated offenders being secured and rehabilitated;
- society is protected by offenders being reintegrated into the community as law-abiding citizens.

In this way, the department contributes to ensuring that all people in South Africa are and feel safe.

Other roleplayers

Medical Parole Advisory Board

The Correctional Matters Amendment Act of 2011 provides for a new medical parole policy and correctional supervision.

Correctional Supervision and Parole Board

Correctional Supervision and Parole boards are responsible for dealing with parole matters and matters of correctional supervision. The Correctional Supervision and Parole boards have decision-making competency except:

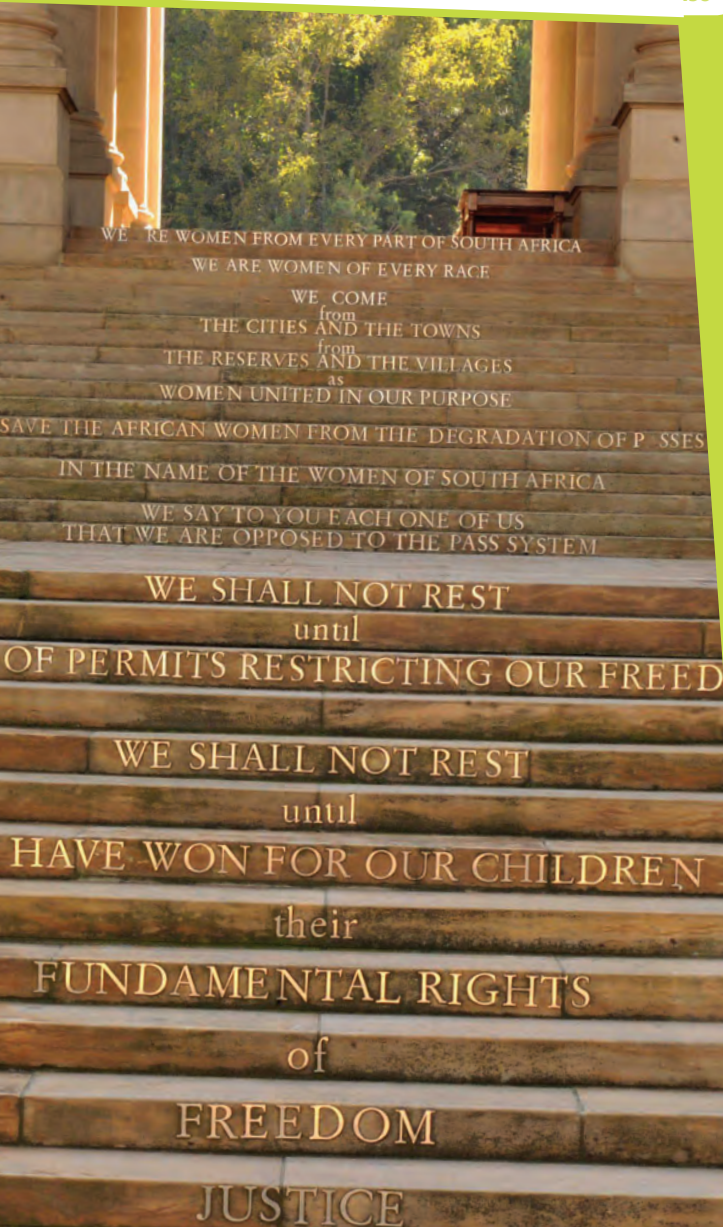
- decisions regarding the granting of parole to people who are declared dangerous criminals in terms of Section 286A of the CPA of 1998.
- the converting of sentences of imprisonment imposed in terms of Section 276 (A) (3) of the CPA of 1998 into correctional supervision.
- decisions with regard to those sentenced to life

imprisonment.

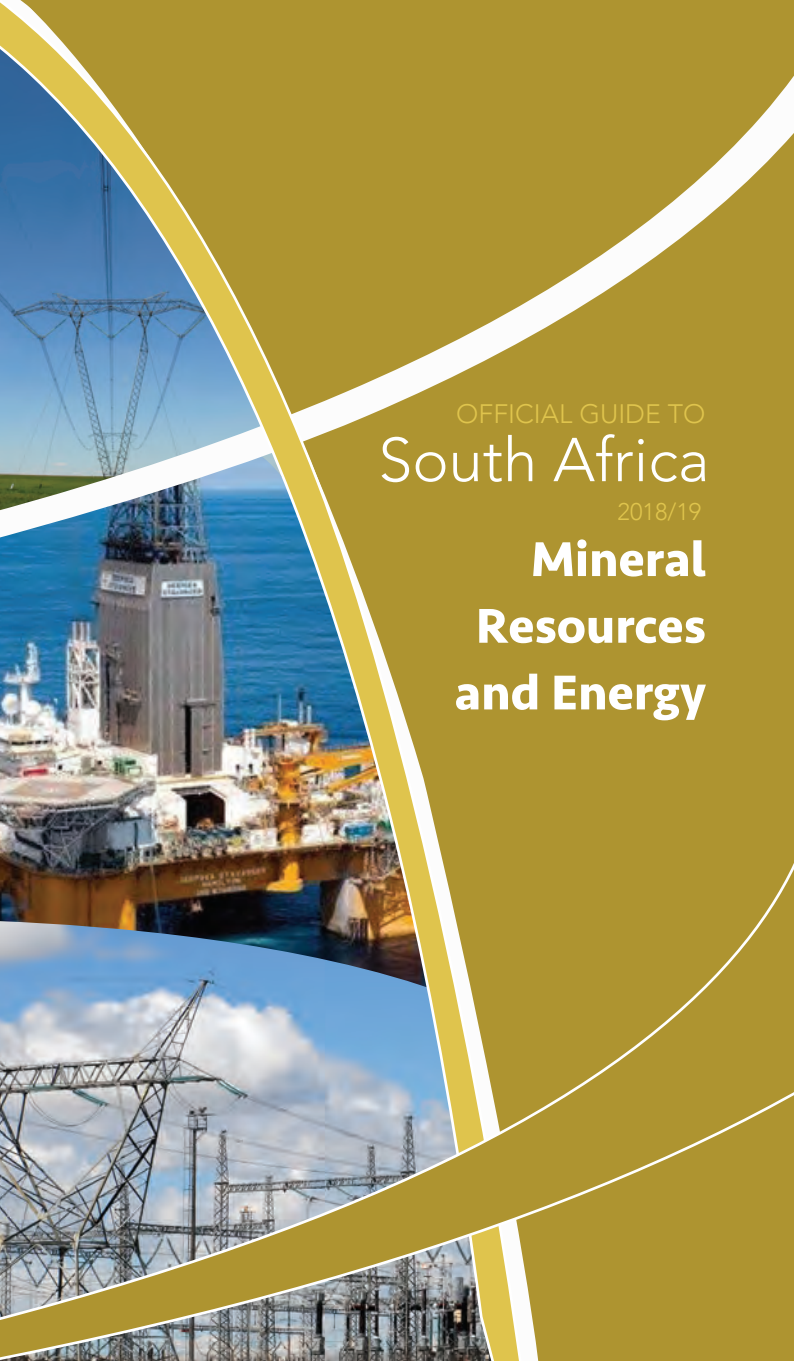
In such cases, recommendations are submitted to the courts that in turn will make a decision in respect of conditional placement.

Correctional Supervision and Parole Boards are chaired by community members who are regarded as suitable and capable of carrying out the responsibilities.

The DCS provides the members with intensive training in respect of the processes, legislative implications and relative policies.



WE ARE WOMEN FROM EVERY PART OF SOUTH AFRICA
WE ARE WOMEN OF EVERY RACE
WE COME
from
THE CITIES AND THE TOWNS
from
THE RESERVES AND THE VILLAGES
as
WOMEN UNITED IN OUR PURPOSE
SAVE THE AFRICAN WOMEN FROM THE DEGRADATION OF PASSES
IN THE NAME OF THE WOMEN OF SOUTH AFRICA
WE SAY TO YOU EACH ONE OF US
THAT WE ARE OPPOSED TO THE PASS SYSTEM
WE SHALL NOT REST
until
OF PERMITS RESTRICTING OUR FREEDOM
WE SHALL NOT REST
until
HAVE WON FOR OUR CHILDREN
their
FUNDAMENTAL RIGHTS
of
FREEDOM
JUSTICE



OFFICIAL GUIDE TO
South Africa

2018/19

**Mineral
Resources
and Energy**

South Africa is richly endowed with mineral resources, and produces more than 30 metal and mineral products. It has huge potential regarding mineral reserves, exploration and production.

Chapters 3, 4 and 5 of the National Development Plan (NDP) detail a vision for South Africa in which a responsible mining sector prioritises the welfare of its human resources and the environment, and contributes significantly to gross domestic product (GDP).

This vision is expressed through Outcome 4 (decent employment through inclusive growth), outcome 6 (an efficient, competitive and responsive economic infrastructure network) and Outcome 10 (protect and enhance our environmental assets and natural resources) of government's 2014-2019 Medium Term Strategic Framework.

The NDP also envisages that, by 2030, South Africa will have an adequate supply of electricity and liquid fuels to maintain economic activity and prevent economic disruptions.

Following the reconfiguration of government departments in June 2019, the Department of Mineral Resources and Department of Energy were merged to form the new Department of Mineral Resources and Energy (DMRE).

Role players

- **Mine Health and Safety Council:** Researches and advises the Minister in terms of mine health and safety, as well as promotes a culture of health and safety in the mining industry.
- **Council for Mineral Technology Research (Mintek):** Provides research, development and technology that fosters the development of business in the mineral and mineral products industries.
- **Council for Geoscience:** Develops and publishes world-class geoscience knowledge products and provides geoscience-related services to the South African public and to industry.
- **South African State Diamond and Precious Minerals Regulator:** Regulates the diamond, platinum and gold sectors.
- **State Diamond Trader:** Promotes equitable access to and beneficiation of diamond resources, addresses distortions in the diamond industry and corrects historical market failures to develop and grow South Africa's diamond-cutting and polishing industry.

- **Sasol:** The international integrated chemicals and energy company develops and commercialises technologies, and builds and operates world-scale facilities to produce a range of high-value product streams, including liquid fuels, chemicals and low-carbon electricity.
- **Eskom:** It generates about 95% of the electricity used in South Africa and about 45% of the electricity used in Africa. It generates, transmits and distributes electricity to industrial, mining, commercial, agricultural and residential customers.
- **iGas** is the official state agency for the development of the hydrocarbon gas industry in southern Africa.
- **PetroSA** is a government-owned oil and gas company.
- The **Petroleum Agency South Africa** promotes exploration for onshore and offshore oil and gas resources, and their optimal development.
- **Petronet** owns, operates, manages and maintains a network of 3 000 km of high-pressure petroleum and gas pipelines, on behalf of the Government.
- The **National Energy Regulator of South Africa** is the regulatory authority for electricity, piped gas and petroleum pipelines.
- The **National Nuclear Regulator** is responsible for safety standards and regulatory practices for the protection of people, property and the environment against nuclear damage.
- The **Nuclear Energy Corporation of South Africa** is responsible for undertaking and promoting research and development in the field of nuclear energy and radiation sciences. It is also responsible for processing source material, including uranium enrichment, and cooperating with other institutions, locally and abroad, on nuclear and related matters.
- The **South African National Energy Development Institute** is mandated to stimulate innovation in energy research and development, transform the gender and race profile of researchers in the sector, and improve South Africa's competitiveness in energy research internationally.
- The **Central Energy Fund** researches, finances, develops and exploits appropriate energy solutions across the spectrum of energy sources to meet South Africa's future energy needs.

- The **National Radioactive Waste Disposal Institute** is mandated to manage the disposal of radioactive waste nationally.

Mining Qualifications Authority (MQA)

The future of mining in the country depends largely on the successful implementation of skills development initiatives.

Particular focus is placed on artisan and artisan aid as well as other technical skills.

The MQA was established as a sector education and training authority, and facilitates the development of appropriate knowledge and skills in the mining, minerals and jewellery sectors.

Shale gas

Shale gas is a natural gas that is occurring and can be extracted from Shale. The natural gas, which is imbedded in the Karoo Basin, can be used for energy production.

Reserves

Gold

The large-scale gold mines operating in South Africa include the record setting TauTona Gold Mine, which extends 3,9 km underground. TauTona means “great lion” in Setswana. South Africa accounts for 10.5% of the world’s gold reserves. The Witwatersrand Basin remains the world’s largest gold resource.

Coal

Government has emphasised the importance of ensuring a sustainable local coal supply for the country’s energy requirements. This commodity currently plays a vital role in meeting South Africa’s primary energy needs, as well as in the economy in general. It is recognised that coal contributes to the economy, not only to supply energy, but through the generation of export revenue, contributing to GDP and employment.

Platinum group metals (PGMs)

Platinum, palladium, rhodium, osmium, ruthenium and iridium occur together in nature alongside nickel and copper. Platinum, palladium and rhodium, the most economically significant of the PGMs, are found in the largest quantities.

South Africa is the world's leading platinum and rhodium producer, and the second-largest palladium producer after Russia. South Africa's production is sourced entirely from the Bushveld Complex, the largest known PGM-resource in the world.

Platinum

South Africa accounts over 80% of known global reserves of the PGMs. The Merensky Reef, stretching from southern Zimbabwe through to the Rustenburg and Pretoria regions, is the centre of platinum mining in South Africa, playing host to companies such as Rustenburg Platinum Mines and Bafokeng Rasimone Platinum Mines.

Palladium

South Africa is the world's second-largest palladium producer. All of South Africa's production is sourced from the Bushveld Igneous Complex, which hosts the world's largest resource of PGMs.

Palladium, together with platinum, is more abundant than any of the other PGMs.

Ferrous minerals

It is the largest new investment in the manganese industry in the country and supports government's drive to increase the beneficiation in South Africa.

Copper

Palabora, a large copper mine, smelter and refinery complex managed by the Palabora Mining Company in Limpopo is South Africa's only producer of refined copper.

Useful byproduct metals and minerals include zirconium chemicals, magnetite and nickel sulphate as well as small quantities of gold, silver and platinum.

Manganese

South Africa has significant proven manganese reserves, but exploitation of the mineral has not reflected its development potential.

Diamonds

According to the Minerals Council South Africa, in 2018 South Africa produced 61 715 Kt of diamonds (64,161 Kt in 2017).

In 2018, the total diamond sales were worth R17 billion and the diamond mining industry employed 16 361 people.

Industrial minerals

Of the hundreds producers of industrial minerals in South Africa, almost half are in the sand and aggregate sector.

There are producers of clays (brickmaking), limestone and dolomite, dimension stone, 28 salt and silica in South Africa.

Bulk consumption of industrial minerals is realised in the domestic market, as most are low-priced commodities and sold in bulk, making their economic exploitation highly dependent on transport costs and distance to markets.

Geology

South Africa has a long and complex geological history dating back to many years.

The preservation of so much Archaean geology, dating back more than 2 500 million years, has resulted in the Archaean Witwatersrand Basin, as well as several greenstone belts, being preserved.

Energy

Guided by the National Energy Act of 2008, government's responsibility is to ensure that diverse energy resources are available in sustainable quantities and affordable prices to support economic growth.

Government is committed to extending access to electricity and enhancing energy efficiency, managing nuclear energy in terms of international commitments, and diversifying the energy generation mix.

The NDP proposes that gas and other renewable resources like wind, solar and hydro-electricity will be viable alternatives to coal and will supply at least 20 000 MW of the additional 29 000 MW of electricity needed by 2030.

Other recommendations in the NDP include diversifying power sources and ownership in the electricity sector, supporting cleaner coal technologies, and investing in human and physical capital in the 12 largest electricity distributors.

Goals beyond 2020 include contracting more than 20 000 megawatts (MW) of renewable energy, including an increasing share from regional hydro-electricity.

South Africa has committed to attain substantial reductions in carbon dioxide emissions by 2025.

The country supports research, technology development and special measures aimed at environmentally sustainable economic growth.

National Strategic Fuels Stock Policy

The National Strategic Fuels Stock Policy sets out the framework for the storage of fuel stock by government and the industry. It aims to ensure uninterrupted supply of petroleum products throughout South Africa by providing adequate strategic stocks and infrastructure such as storage facilities and pipeline capacity.

Strategic stocks are to be used during declared emergencies. The Minister of Energy will have the power to decide when a shortage of fuel and oil is at such a level to warrant an emergency.

National Liquid Petroleum Gas (LPG) Strategy

The LPG Strategy's main objectives are to provide access to safe, cleaner, efficient, portable, environmentally friendly and affordable thermal fuel for all households, and to switch low-income households away from the use of coal, paraffin and biomass to LPG.

The strategy highlights strategic options that could be adopted for the orderly development of the LPG industry in South Africa to make LPG an energy carrier of choice for thermal applications. LPG is considered one of the safest, cleanest and most sustainable energy sources.

National building standards

Energy-efficient regulations for new buildings form part of the deliverables of South Africa's National Energy Strategy to strengthen standards and regulations for energy efficiency.

The energy-efficient regulations apply to residential and commercial buildings, places of learning and worship, certain medical clinics and other categories of building.

The regulations make it compulsory for all new buildings to be designed and constructed to a standard that makes it possible for the user to minimise the energy required to meet the functional requirements. This will save energy significantly, which will relieve pressure on the electricity supply grid.

In addition to temperature regulations, all buildings will also have to be fitted with renewable-energy water-heating

systems such as solar systems, which also have to comply with South African national standards.

Southern African Power Pool (SAPP)

The SAPP was created with the primary aim to provide reliable and economical electricity supply to the consumers of each of the SAPP members, consistent with the reasonable use of natural resources and the effect on the environment.

The SAPP allows the free trading of electricity between Southern African Development Community member countries, providing South Africa with access to the vast hydropower potential in the countries to the north, notably the Congo River (Inga Falls).

Electricity

As part of the Integrated National Electrification Programme, which aims to extend access to electricity to all households across South Africa, about 590 000 households were expected to be connected to the electricity grid over the medium term.

A further 20 000 households per year over the same period would be provided with non-grid (mainly solar) electrification systems. Government planned to develop an electrification master plan to inform the roll-out of electrification connections for universal access.

Biofuel

The biofuels industry in South Africa, the continent's biggest agricultural producer, has been held back by an inadequate regulatory regime and concerns that biofuels would hurt food security and affect food prices.

Canola, sunflower and soya are feedstock for biodiesel, while sugarcane and sugar beet are feedstock for ethanol.

Maize, South Africa's staple food, will not be used in the production of biofuels to ensure food security and control high prices.

The biofuels sector has strong linkages to agriculture, manufacturing and distribution, and has the potential to create substantial numbers of labour-intensive jobs in the agriculture sector in particular.

In addition, second-generation biofuel technology will also contribute to South Africa meeting its renewable energy targets sustainably.

Hydropower

Energy from water can be generated from waves, tides, waterfalls and rivers and will never be depleted as long as water is available. South Africa has a mix of small hydroelectricity stations and pumped-water storage schemes.

Solar power

Most areas in South Africa average more than 2 500 hours of sunshine per year, and average daily solar-radiation levels range between 4,5 kWh/m² and 6,5 kWh/m² in one day.

The southern African region, and in fact the whole of Africa, has sunshine all year round. The annual 24-hour global solar radiation average is about 220 W/m² for South Africa.

Wind power

Wind energy, like solar energy, is a free and sustainable renewable energy source that is being used to generate electricity.

Hybrid systems

Hybrid energy systems are a combination of two or more renewable energy sources such as photovoltaic, wind, micro-hydro, storage batteries and fuel-powered generator sets to provide a reliable off-grid supply.

Nuclear

Government has committed, through the Nuclear Energy Policy and Integrated Resource Plan (IRP), to an energy mix consisting of coal, gas, hydro, nuclear, solar and wind.

The nuclear new build programme will enable the country to create jobs, develop skills, create industries, and catapult the country into a knowledge economy.

The IRP 2010-2030 envisages 9 600 MW additional nuclear capacity by 2030. The IRP is a 20-year projection on electricity supply and demand.

Eskom operates the Koeberg Nuclear Power Station near Cape Town, the only nuclear power station in South Africa and the entire African continent, which supplies power to the national grid.

Renewable Energy Independent Power Producer Procurement Programme (REIPPPP)

The REIPPPP, established in 2010, has become one of the world's most progressive and successful alternative energy programmes.

Ever since the introduction of these renewable energy technology programmes (solar, wind, biomass, small hydro and landfill gas power), plants have been going up across the country, feeding additional, clean energy into the national grid.

The REIPPPP represents the country's most comprehensive strategy to date in achieving the transition to a greener economy. The programme has been designed to contribute to the development of a local green industry and the creation of green jobs.

The programme seeks to procure energy from small scale IPPs, with projects that generate between one MW and five MW of energy from solar, wind, biomass and landfill gas projects. Through the REIPPPP, government is targeting the procurement of 13 225 MW from IPPs by 2025.

Working for Energy Programme

The Working for Energy Programme is a social programme mainly intended to provide energy services derived from renewable resources to rural and urban low income houses in a manner that facilitates job creation, skills development, community-based enterprise development and the emancipation of youth, women and people with disabilities thereby creating sustainable livelihoods. It is an integral part of the Expanded Public Works Programme.





OFFICIAL GUIDE TO South Africa

2018/19

Police and Defence

The Department of Police is responsible for law-enforcement-services, policy determination, direction and overall execution of the department's mandate in relation to relevant legislation.

The Minister of Police is responsible for determining national policing policy (Section 206 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996 and the overall execution of the department's mandate, in relation to the key pieces of legislation:

The National Police Commissioner answers directly to the Minister of Police. Entities reporting to the Minister of Police are the:

- Civilian Secretariat for Police
- Independent Police Investigative Directorate (IPID)
- South African Police Service (SAPS)
- Private Security Industry Regulatory Authority.

South African Police Service

The SAPS is South Africa's principal law-enforcement body and its vision of the SAPS is to create a safe and secure environment for all people in South Africa. The mission of the SAPS is to: prevent and combat crime that may threaten the safety and security of any community; investigate any crimes threatening the safety and security of any community; ensure that offenders are brought to justice; and participate in efforts to address the causes of crime.

The National Commissioner is the Accounting Officer of the SAPS. Deputy National Commissioners (under whom the divisions and components of the SAPS fall) and provincial commissioners (under whom the cluster and station commanders fall) report to the National Commissioner.

The SAPS's policing objectives, in accordance with the provisions of Section 205 of the Constitution, are to:

- prevent, combat and investigate crime;
- maintain public order;
- protect and secure the inhabitants of South Africa and their property; and
- uphold and enforce the law.

The vision of the SAPS is to create a safe and secure environment for all people in South Africa.

The mission of the SAPS is to:

- prevent and combat anything that may threaten the safety and security of any community;
- investigate any crimes that threaten the safety and security of any community;

- ensure offenders are brought to justice; and
 - participate in efforts to address the root causes of crime.
- The National Development Plan (NDP) envisages a South African society which is safe at home, at school and at work and enjoying a life which is free of fear.

This is also in line with Outcome 3 (All people in South Africa are and feel safe) of government's 2014-2019 Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF).

The NDP sets five priorities for the achievement of the above vision:

- Strengthen the criminal justice system;
- Make the police service professional;
- Demilitarise the police;
- Build safety using an integrated approach; and
- Build community participation in safety.

Chapter 12 of the NDP details the need to build safer communities in South Africa through a holistic view of safety and security. Outcome 3 (all people in South Africa are and feel safe) of government's 2014-2019 MTSF gives expression to this and is aligned with the crime prevention and investigation operations of the Department of Police.

In this regard, the department's focus over the medium term will continue to be on: strengthening the implementation of recovery plans for visible policing, detective services and service terminations; enhancing operational capacity for Public Order Policing (POP); and combating gender-based violence (GBV), serial murder and serial rape through implementing the minister's six point plan on GBV and implementing the new standardised policy on the investigation and management of serial murder and serial rape.

Addressing these priorities lays the groundwork for a police service that is responsive to the safety and security needs of society, and upholds a high standard of conduct and professionalism.

Legislative changes

Cabinet approved the *White Paper on Safety and Security* and the *White Paper on Policing* in 2018/19.

In November 2018, the Minister of Police approved the Use of Force Policy and Guidelines, which provide direction to the SAPS on the legal and professional standards required when exercising the use of force.

The policy articulates a human rights compliant approach, which must inform police management, strategy and operations.

In March 2019, the Minister of Police approved the Single Police Service Policy Framework, which outlines the parameters for integration, cooperation and collaboration of the SAPS, Metropolitan Police Service and traffic police, where relevant. The objective is to improve uniformity, efficiency and effectiveness within the law enforcement value-chain.

The Critical Infrastructure Protection Bill of 2017 seeks to replace the National Key Points Act of 1980 and bring the legal framework for the protection of critical infrastructure in line with constitutional imperatives and changing developments, both nationally and internationally.

It is aimed at ensuring that South Africa maintains a robust and sustainable approach to the protection of the country's critical infrastructure, in the interest of the State and all citizens.

It creates a transparent process of declaring critical infrastructure which involves several government departments, the private sector and community bodies.

Resources

At the end of March 2019, the establishment of the SAPS was 192 277, including 150 855 SAPS Act of 1995 (as amended) members and 41 422 Public Service Act members, compared to 193 297 personnel, at the end of March 2018. During this period, a total of 2 880 people with disabilities were employed by the SAPS. The police/population ratio was 1:383.

During 2018/19, the average employee turnover rate was 3,0%, which represents a marginal increase of 2,7% compared to 2017/18. The loss of critical skills is monitored monthly to direct proactive interventions.

Resignations contributed significantly towards the number of exits recorded in the 2018/19 financial year, followed by retirements. Resignations increased from 2 039 in 2017/18 to 2 180 in 2018/19.

Retirements increased from 1 412 in 2017/18 to 1 781 in 2018/19. The most prominent reasons for employees resigning from the service is due to more lucrative work prospects, including better compensation opportunities.

Furthermore, specific attention is being given to improving training in the areas of forensics, crime investigations, the POP environment, cybercrime and preventing crimes against women and children, to ensure that the SAPS contributes towards a South Africa where all people are and feel safe.

Rapid Rail Police Units covers about 33 000 km rail lines nationally.

Crime in South Africa

Serious crime include contact crime, contact-related crime, property-related crime and other serious crime (theft, shoplifting and fraud). The SAPS uses enhanced police visibility and targeted crime-prevention operations to deter and detect prevailing threats, within a particular policing precinct, either at police station, cluster or provincial levels. .

All provinces contributed towards the increase in serious crime, including contact crime, contact-related crime and other serious crime. A decrease was, however, recorded in property-related crime. During the beginning of 2018/19, the country experienced a high rate of Cash-in-Transit (CIT) robberies.

All provinces were targeted, especially Gauteng, North West and Limpopo. Other provinces such as the Western Cape and Eastern Cape experienced gang violence. Taxi violence across the country and the torching of trains in the Western Cape, political killings in KwaZulu-Natal and sporadic incidences of violent service delivery protests countrywide, have impacted negatively on the execution of crime-prevention operations.

Most crimes against women and children are committed in private spaces and victims, and perpetrators usually know each other, which makes it difficult to police. Increased awareness to inform the community on the protection of women and children, including personal safety, through hints, pamphlets and community outreach programmes, could have resulted in more crimes being reported.

GBV and awareness

The SAPS acknowledges the rights of people with disabilities, as enshrined in the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996 and the *White Paper on the Rights of People with Disabilities* of 2015.

In 2018, the SAPS compiled the first Disability Action Plan. The plan will enhance the SAPS's efforts to address the challenges faced by people with disabilities and provides mechanisms to ensure that all SAPS employees understand and respect the rights of people with disabilities, as well as to ensure continuous service to the community, in accordance with the SAPS Act of 1995.

The SAPS intends to promote, protect and ensure full and equal enjoyment of all human rights and fundamental freedom by all persons with disabilities.

The SAPS has developed the Traditional Leadership in Policing Concept (to outline the role that traditional leadership can play in ensuring a crime-free environment, in support of economic and social stability), the GBV Strategy (to intensify and accelerate efforts to prevent acts of GBV, by creating multisectoral and long-term strategic interventions) and the Youth Crime Prevention Strategy (to enable, direct, guide and empower young people to play an active role in building a safe and secure South Africa).

The effective rendering of victim-friendly services to all victims of crime is continuously monitored, by ensuring that Victim-Friendly Rooms are available and that they are not utilised for other purposes, other than statement taking for victims of crime. All 1 149 police stations are rendering victim-friendly services to victims of crime.

Police actions and arrests

The facets of the reduction and combating of crime are executed through police actions.

These actions are conducted to enhance visibility in all police station areas and are coupled with operations to support provinces and police stations in stabilising and normalising crime.

Crime-prevention operations are aimed at creating conditions in which opportunities for the commission of crime will be reduced and include actions such as roadblocks, patrols, cordon-and-search operations, visits, compliance inspections and searches of premises, persons and vehicles.

The Operational Command Concept has been established to intensify crime combating initiatives, with the aim of giving effect to crime reduction and to enable an environment where the community feels safe.

The SAPS established multidisciplinary national forums with the objective of joining forces in the fight against crime and crime prevention initiatives.

Monthly/quarterly meetings were conducted with the National Rural Safety Forum, the National Community Police Consultative Forum, the Microdot Association of South Africa, Operation Rhino 9, the National Business Forum and the Non-Ferrous Metal Crime Combating Committee (NFMCCC).

Operation Fiela Reclaim II was also conducted, nationally, aimed at combating serious and violent crime, as well as Operation Safer Festive Season, aimed at ensuring that communities can enjoy a peaceful and safe festive season.

School Safety Programme

The implementation of the School Safety Programme is guided by the School Safety Protocol, which was entered into by the SAPS and the Department of Basic Education in 2011.

To realise the objectives of the protocol, the SAPS is to link schools to local police stations and to raise awareness amongst children and young learners regarding crime and violence, as well as its impact on individuals, families and education.

Schools are identified on the basis of crime prevalence or threats of crime and violence. Provinces identify schools to address activities relating to specific crimes and/or challenges, focusing on bullying, sexual offences, substance abuse, vandalism, burglary, dangerous weapons and gangsterism, amongst other threats.

Forensic Science Services and Criminal Record Centre

The function of the Criminal Record Centre is to identify and confirm any previous convictions of suspects in crimes being investigated by the SAPS.

The Criminal Record and Crime Scene Management arm expanded its frontline service delivery capacity to make it more accessible to local investigating officers and to improve response times in attending to crime scenes.

The Forensic Science Laboratory renders a support service to investigating officers by analysing physical evidence collected from various crime scenes.

The accuracy and reliability of information provided by the SAPS's Forensic Service is crucial to the success of crime investigations and prosecution.

Drug eradication

More drug confiscations were recorded in 2018/19, with the exception of heroin, compared to 2017/18.

The Constitutional Court judgement, with regard to sections 4(b) and 5(b) of the Drugs and Drug Trafficking Act of 1992, read with Part III of Schedule 2 of that Act and Section 22A(9) (a)(1) of the Medicines and Related Substances Control Act of 1965, created confusion because there was no uniform approach by members of the SAPS in dealing with cannabis-related cases.

The SAPS supports the framework set out by the National Drug Master Plan, and continues to give input and report on the National Drug Authority Annual Plan on Community Education.

This is to reduce substance abuse and raise awareness on how to deal with problems related to substance abuse, police actions to reduce the supply of liquor which is sold illegally and illicit drugs, and to ensure effective enforcement of drug and liquor legislation, to address serious, violent and contact crime, which is associated with substance abuse.

In the fight to have a drug-free society, the South African Narcotics Enforcement Bureau Unit continues to dismantle clandestine drug laboratories and arrest suspects. An integrated intelligence-led operating model is used to identify and prioritise organised criminal groups that are specialising in the illicit production of drugs.

Vehicle crime

From 1 April 2018 to 31 March 2019, a total of 61 775 vehicles were reported stolen or robbed, including 42 879 or 69,41% reported as stolen and 18 896 or 30,59% reported as robbed.

In comparison with 2017/18, the number of vehicles stolen decreased with 2 257 and the number of vehicles robbed decreased with 193, representing an overall decrease of 3,23%.

A total of 28 418 vehicles were recovered, including 22 442 identified vehicles, 5 773 unidentified vehicles and 203 vehicles recovered during cross-border initiatives.

The number of vehicles recovered increased with 671 or 2,42% in 2018/19, compared with 2017/18.

Firearms control

The Central Firearms Register is mandated to administer firearm applications, in accordance with the prescripts of the Firearm Control Act of 2000.

Its primary objective is to prevent the proliferation of illegally possessed firearms, providing for the removal of those firearms from society, improving control over legally possessed firearms and promoting responsible firearm ownership in South Africa.

The circulation of lost, stolen and found firearms plays an essential role in the investigation of firearm-related crime, in the efficient control of firearms and ultimately, in the reduction of the proliferation of firearms.

Firearms without serial numbers are issued with Firearm Identification Numbers and earmarked for destruction.

The SAPS issues firearm licences, competency certificates, permits and authorisations to individuals and businesses, in terms of the provisions and subject to compliance with the prerequisites of firearm control legislation, after comprehensive assessment of the content of applications and supporting documentation.

Liquor control

The SAPS plays a pivotal role in enforcing compliance to National and Provincial Liquor Legislation. The existing partnership between the Department of Trade, Industry and Competition, the National Liquor Authority and the SAPS, to address enforcement of compliance to the Liquor Act of 2003 was strengthened through the review and signing of a Memorandum of Agreement to appoint SAPS members as liquor inspectors, thereby assisting in the enhanced enforcement of compliance to the Act.

Illegal gambling

A Stakeholder Priority Committee to address illegal gambling was established, on 17 April 2018 to enhance collaboration between the national and provincial gambling authorities/boards, the SAPS, the National Prosecuting Authority (NPA) and other stakeholders concerned, to address challenges in the gambling environment.

The committee comprises various specialised units within the SAPS and key external stakeholders, such as the National Gambling Board (NGB), the NPA and the Financial Intelligence

Centre to initiate, coordinate and make recommendations on all actions required by the NGB, SAPS, NPA and other stakeholders (Government and other entities involved), to enhance collaboration to effectively address the detection, investigation and the prosecution of illegal gambling cases.

In 2018/19, a Terms of Reference and an action plan were approved to address illegal gambling.

Second-hand goods services

The number of registered second-hand goods dealers varies annually, due to the registration of new and the closure of existing registered dealers. At the end of March 2019, a total of 20 490 registered second-hand goods dealers were recorded, compared to 18 017, in 2017/18.

Most registered dealers are in Gauteng (3 756), Western Cape (4 988), KwaZulu-Natal (2 721) and North West (1 565).

A 6,8% decrease was noted in non-ferrous metal-related crimes, compared to 2017/18, which could be attributed to joint initiatives implemented by all industry stakeholders involved in the NFMCCC.

An initiative was implemented in all provinces, in cooperation with Business Against Crime, South Africa and the Microdot Industry in South Africa, to enhance the skills and knowledge of members to identify potential stolen vehicles when conducting compliance inspections at registered second-hand vehicle dealers.

Emergency Response Services

The 22 SAPS 10111 Command Centres received 23 233 385 calls in 2018/19, compared to 12 635 519 in 2017/18, an increase of 46,61% in the number of calls received, compared to 2017/18.

The 30 Flying Squad units countrywide are being used as force multipliers in support of police stations and other units. They serve as back-up for all the police stations in its service area if the police station needs assistance during life threatening circumstances.

The Flying Squad has been mandated to ensure a rapid response to priority or serious and violent crimes in progress, which require immediate response, as well as police assistance during less serious crimes/complaints, if no other response vehicle is available.

Hostage negotiators have been involved in hostage and related crisis incidents, including national and international

negotiations, such as hostage, barricade and kidnapping incidents, as well as dealing with suicidal or mentally disturbed persons.

The SAPS has six established Accident Combating units and seven Accident Response teams countrywide. Members of the various units and teams respond and investigate culpable homicide and high-profile road crashes, including state vehicle crashes, in support of police stations.

These units and teams also conduct reconstruction of road crash scenes and mechanically investigate vehicles involved in high profile crashes when the need arises. The K9 units also perform duties at ports of entry/exit.

The SAPS Veterinary Services, as the custodian of animal welfare in the SAPS, has a mandate to educate all K9 handlers and mounted riders on basic animal handling and health courses, to ensure understanding of the basic but essential welfare needs of animals they work with daily.

Police reaction time

The SAPS's reaction time to complaints remains an important factor in the services that are rendered by police stations. The reaction time is defined as the time it takes to respond to a complaint.

Response times are based on the severity of the crime and are classified according to the Alpha, Bravo and Charlie System.

Alpha complaints are crimes in progress, which require immediate police response or action. Bravo complaints are crimes that have already taken place, with no immediate threat to the complainant or property, such as a report of a housebreaking that has already occurred. Charlie complaints are crimes of a less serious nature such as loitering and trespassing.

During 2018/19, the national average reaction time was 17:05 minutes for Alpha complaints, 20:28 minutes for Bravo complaints and 18:48 minutes for Charlie complaints.

Reservist system

The reservist system provides for the active involvement of the community in policing to support a community-oriented policing approach.

The reservist system and the focus of the SAPS on quality reservists and not quantity, has limited the number of applications with fewer applicants meeting the requirements.

Partnership policing

Partnership policing is implemented to ensure a collaborative relationship between the SAPS and external stakeholders, including community organisations, business, the private sector, non-governmental organisations and civil society. It is intended to encourage local communities to actively work with the SAPS to develop common approaches and objectives to fight crime.

Three police stations, namely; Kubusiedrift Police Station in the Eastern Cape, Mokopong Police Station in North West and Boetsap Police Station in the Northern Cape are farm stations with no community residing in the policing area. As a result, these police stations were exempted from establishing a CPF. Instead, Rural Safety committees were established.

The Junior National Commissioner Project was introduced to recruit young people, especially learners, to be part of crime-fighting initiatives, while discouraging the youth from participating in various crime trends, such as drug abuse and gangsterism.

It is one of the SAPS' Youth Crime Prevention flagship projects that seek to provide the youth of South Africa, with an opportunity to contribute and play a meaningful role in ensuring a safe and conducive learning environment in schools. The project also inculcates leadership, mentorship, moral and ethical values in the youth.

On 20 October 2018, the SAPS launched the first of its kind Community Policing Strategy and Community in Blue Policing Concept under the theme: "Towards an integrated and sustainable policing for a safe and secure South Africa".

The objective of Community Policing Strategy is to enhance structured community involvement in crime prevention by making sure all people in South Africa are and feel safe, through multidisciplinary collaborations or interventions.

The Community in Blue Policing Concept aims to standardise the establishment and functioning of community in blue patrollers within the SAPS, which is inclusive of street committees, neighbourhood watches and community patrollers to encourage more citizens to participate in a structured way in crime prevention.

The SAPS implements Sector Policing as a community-centred policing approach to enhance service delivery, police response and interaction, as well as the participation of the community in crime prevention.

Rural safety

The SAPS prioritises the safety of the rural and farming communities, and continues to implement the comprehensive Rural Safety Strategy, in accordance with Chapter 12 of the NDP, which emphasises the need for all communities to be safe.

The current National Rural Safety Strategy was reviewed in 2018/19, to address rural safety as an integrated day-to-day policing approach by creating a safe and secure rural environment.

The approved strategy will be implemented through an integrated and multidisciplinary approach, including the mobilisation of the rural community in creating a safe and secure, crime-free environment, which is conducive to food security, the reduction of serious and violent crime, the prevention of stock theft, as well as social and economic stability.

Police stations are reclassified, at the end of every financial year, to ensure updated classifications. In 2018/19, a total of 885 of the 1 149 police stations were classified as rural or rural-urban mixed police stations.

The current Rural Safety Strategy was fully implemented at 880 rural and rural/urban mixed police stations, in line with the set criteria of the four pillars of the Rural Safety Strategy.

Operational Response Services

The responsibility to respond to and stabilise medium to high-risk incidents, to ensure that normal policing continues, falls under the broader tactical environment of the National Intervention units (NIU), the Special Task Force (STF) units, the POP units and Mobile Operations under the Operational Response Service Division.

Specialised interventions

The policing and stabilising of public disorder and the responsibility to respond to medium to high-risk incidents, as well as to ensure that normal policing continues, falls under the POP units and the broader tactical environment of the NIU, the STF units, Tactical Response teams and Mobile Operations.

National Operational Coordination is responsible for developing, implementing and monitoring an integrated all-of-government and police specific operations, to address

SAPS and Justice, Crime Prevention and Security priorities and managing major events.

The two Mobile Operations units are responsible for the safeguarding of valuable and/or dangerous government cargo.

SAPS Air Wing

The SAPS Air Wing provides air support for crime-related matters to police stations, other units and specialised forces. A total of 5 028.3 hours were flown during 2018/19 compared to 4 854.8 hours in 2017/18.

This includes 4 022.1 operational hours flown for crime-related matters such as call-outs (914.7 hours), crime prevention (1 149.9 hours), planned operations (1 612.2 hours) and assistance to the specialised forces (345.3 hours).

Call-outs included airborne assistance, in respect of armed robberies, house robberies, hijacking, vehicle theft, stock theft, game theft, serious and violent crime investigations, unrest-related incidents and crowd control, operational support to other units, as well as search and rescue incidents.

A total of 1 006.2 hours were flown for non-crime related flights, including communication flights (314.4 hours), shows (54.4 hours), training (409.3 hours) and maintenance flights (228.1 hours).

Specialised policing

The SAPS renders specialised policing services to neighbouring countries, in fulfilment of Outcome 11 of government's Programme of Action: "Enhanced Africa Agenda and Sustainable Development".

It includes the deployment of members on peacekeeping missions and other interventions, in accordance with the United Nations (UN) Security Council Resolutions, African Union (AU) Constitutive Act and Southern African Development Community Agreements, as agreed on by the the Cabinet of the Republic of South Africa.

Airport security

In responding to follow-home robberies, and other related crimes against international and domestic travellers, as well as airport users, valuable cargo and corruption, in and around the Oliver Tambo International Airport (ORTIA), a National Key Point, an Integrated Multidisciplinary Tactical Security Plan was developed at the ORTIA.

A multidisciplinary investigation team was formed to work closely with other government departments and security companies to attend to the risks and threats involved when travellers arrive or depart from the airport. Since the implementation of the plan, crime at ORTIA was reduced.

The plan was rolled out to other identified ports, including the Cape Town and King Shaka International Airports, Durban and Cape Town Harbours, as well as Beit Bridge and Lebombo Ports of Entry, during 2018/19.

The Aviation Policing Learning Programme aims to equip SAPS all members in the civil-aviation environment with the necessary skills, knowledge and capability to secure, protect and safeguard passengers, crew, ground personnel, the general public and the airport infrastructure.

Detective Service

The Detective Service Programme comprises the Crime Investigations, Specialised Investigations, Criminal Record Centre and Forensic Service Laboratory Subprogrammes, which are managed by the Detective Service and Forensic Services Divisions, as well as the Directorate for Priority Crime Investigations (DPCI).

The Detective Service Division is responsible for managing the activities of the Detective Service, in accordance with the mission and priorities of the SAPS and to actively implement and exercise effective control over these activities. The purpose of the Division is to enable the investigative work of the SAPS, including providing support to investigators, in terms of forensic evidence and criminal records.

The objective of the Division is the successful prosecution of offenders by investigating, gathering and analysing evidence. The Division comprises Crime Investigation Service; FCS Investigation Service; Specific Crime Investigations; Organised and Commercial Crime Investigation, and Anti-Corruption outside the mandate of the DPCI.

In addition to detective units at police stations, there are 245 detective service centres that provide a 24-hour service at police stations in various provinces. Police stations that have no 24-hour service have standby police officers to give attention to cases that are reported after hours.

The Cold Case Strategy was developed, approved and implemented in 2018/19 to expedite the investigations on stagnant cases and the tracing and charging of suspects.

Crime detection

The detection of crime is the process that the SAPS undertakes, which extends from the time that the SAPS becomes aware of a crime and where a case docket is subsequently opened for investigation, until the time that a suspect has been arrested and charged or the case docket has been closed off as unfounded or as withdrawn before court.

This process includes the use of recognised investigative aids and the services of other divisions within the SAPS.

Bureau for Missing Persons

During the 2018/19 financial year, a total of 6 465 circulations and 12 670 cancellations of information and photographs of missing and wanted persons, as well as unidentified bodies, were done, both internally to SAPS members, as well as nationally and internationally, via printed and electronic media and mediums, to the general public.

A total of 62 postings were done, representing missing children and/or adults, whose information and photographs were placed on the Internet.

These postings are executed through distribution by various email addresses and do not include printing and distribution of information by private businesses. The end-user prints the poster of the missing person and displays it at his/her shop/place of business.

Crime Stop

Crime Stop provided ongoing support in the investigation, solving and prevention of crime. On receipt of tip-offs, through a toll-free number (08600 10111), SMS or electronic media, it is transmitted to the relevant police station for the necessary attention.

During 2018/19, Crime Stop and Crime Line handled a total of 96 805 inbound and outbound calls, which resulted in 68 arrests on 91 positive cases. The value of items confiscated was over R1,5 million.

Family Violence, Child Protection and Sexual Offences

FCS Investigation Service, includes FCS Investigations and Serial and Electronic FCS investigations.

This component emanates from the FCS mandate to ensure the effective and efficient investigation of crime that emerges from identified serial FCS offenders and electronic crimes (child pornography).

The Forensic Social Work Services Section is responsible for rendering forensic social work support to these investigations. It is a specialised investigation unit which was established to ensure effectiveness and efficiency in combating crimes against women and children, by means of both proactive and reactive strategies.

The forensic social worker acts as a neutral independent fact-finder, who tests multiple hypotheses, through techniques that are legally defensible in court.

Crimes against women and children

Violence against women and children takes many forms, including physical, sexual, economic and psychosocial, but all of these represent a violation of human dignity and human rights and have lasting consequences for women and children, as well as their communities.

The reduction of serious crime remains a crucial challenge for the SAPS. Unacceptably high levels of crime in South Africa, especially serious and violent crime, result in people of South Africa living in fear and feeling unsafe, particularly vulnerable groups such as women and children.

Therefore, addressing crimes against women and children continues to be a priority for the SAPS.

Specialised Investigations

The DPCI was established as an independent directorate within the SAPS, in terms of Section 17C of the SAPS Act of 1995, as amended by the SAPS Act of 2008. The DPCI mandate is to prevent, combat and investigate national priority offences, in particular serious organised crime, serious commercial crime, serious corruption and cybercrime.

Serious commercial crime

Serious commercial crime refers to serious fraud, forgery and uttering, theft (such as the theft of trust funds), commercial crime, that is of such extent or complexity that it requires the services of a chartered accountant or other specialists or experts, during investigation and contraventions of certain statutes relating to commercial crime, including

statutes relating to, among others, companies, trusts and close corporations, long and short-term insurance, the counterfeiting of currency, the counterfeiting and illicit trade in counterfeit products and goods, intellectual property rights, banks and the banking industry, exchange control, estate agents, serious corruption and cyber-related crime.

Serious organised crime

Serious Organised Crime units investigate declared priority crimes through Serious Organised Crime Project Investigations (OCPI).

These crimes, include narcotics, theft of non-ferrous metals, theft of copper cables, dealing in abalone, money laundering, fraud, gang-related murder, wildlife trafficking, illegal trade in tobacco products, corruption, forgery, car and truck hijacking, dealing in stolen property, cultivation of hydrophobic cannabis and illegal drug production, as regulated by the Prevention and Combating of Corrupt Activities Act of 2004 and the Prevention of Organised Crime Act of 1998.

Serious corruption

Serious corruption, includes the misuse of a public or private office or position or resources with a corrupt intent and may include an act of bribery, nepotism, extortion, fraud and theft. This includes but is not limited to, offences under the Prevention and Combating of Corrupt Activities Act of 2004.

The DPCI Serious Corruption Investigation Unit has achieved major successes in arresting officials involved in procurement fraud and corruption-related cases.

Cybercrime

Cybercrime investigation within the SAPS is evolving into a distinctive investigative discipline. The development of investigative disciplines within the SAPS, such as digital forensic investigation, online investigation, unauthorised access and intrusion investigation and open source social media investigation, are entrenched in investigative methodologies aligned to international benchmarking standards.

The Cybercrime Strategy and Implementation Framework, is expected to provide an integrated framework for the SAPS to address cybercrime.

Forensic Science Laboratory

The SAPS remains committed towards the realisation of processing the different categories of exhibits/entries (routine case exhibits/entries, non-routine case exhibits/entries, priority case exhibits/entries and intelligence case exhibits/entries).

The backlog of cases exhibits/entries not yet finalised, remains at very low levels and also below the international acceptable norm of 10% of cases on hand.

The legislation requires that authorised persons (trained detectives) may take DNA buccal samples from certain categories of persons.

The implementation of legislation such as the DNA and Fingerprint Acts, is proving to be a catalyst in linking unidentified perpetrators to criminal offences, where forensic physical material is left at the crime scene.

Investigative Psychology continues to play a critical role in the linking of suspects to serial cases and ensuring related arrests, sentencing and convictions. DNA evidence and, in particular, the National Forensic DNA Database is proving to be one of the most effective investigative methods of identifying and convicting serial rapists.

Crime Intelligence

The Crime Intelligence Programme comprises the Intelligence Operations and the Intelligence and Information Management subprogrammes, managed by the Crime Intelligence Division.

This division is responsible for the gathering, collation, evaluation, analysis and coordination of intelligence. Legislative prescriptions require the SAPS to confine its intelligence activities to crime, criminal activities and security-related matters.

The core function of Crime Intelligence is to provide intelligence to operational divisions for the use in the prevention of crime or to conduct criminal investigations and to prepare evidence for the purpose of law enforcement and the prosecution of offenders.

Crime Intelligence is a key enabler in support of both proactive and reactive policing. The Division also provided intelligence-related services such as lifestyle audits, security screening and vetting to the SAPS.

Intelligence and Information Management

Proactive intelligence products include threat and risk assessment and early warning reports. The purpose of a threat and risk assessment is to provide intelligence/information to operational units for the purpose of preventing the perpetration of certain criminal acts.

It is also used to determine the force and resources required for deployment to address identified crime threats/risks effectively.

Crime Intelligence generates early warning reports containing proactive information of an imminent threat, that is either being planned or is already emerging and requires policing intervention.

Reactive intelligence products include profiles and intelligence analysis reports, such as communication analysis reports and association/network analysis reports.

Protection and Security Services (PSS)

The PSS Programme comprises the VIP Protection Services, the Static and Mobile Security and the Government Security Regulator subprogrammes, managed by the PSS Division and the Presidential Protection Service (PPS) component.

The PPS division is a national competency with nine provincial offices located throughout South Africa. The division provides in-transit and static protection to all identified VIPs, including the Speaker/Deputy Speaker of the National Assembly, Ministers/Deputy Ministers, premiers, members of the Executive Council, the Chief Justice, judge presidents and ad hoc VIPs, in terms of the Risk Information Management Support System Policy and National Key Points and identified strategic installations (national and provincial government departments).

The division also provides protection to identified foreign dignitaries, who are visiting South Africa. Static protection, include the provisioning of protection to the 10 parliaments (the National Assembly and nine provincial legislatures).

Presidential Protection Service

The PPS component is a national competency with provincial offices, which are located in Gauteng, the Western Cape, KwaZulu-Natal and the Eastern Cape.

The component provides in-transit and static protection to the President, the Deputy President, former presidents,

former deputy presidents, their spouses, identified VIPs, including foreign heads of state/government, former heads of state/government and their spouses and at identified government installations.

The in-transit protection function is performed in Gauteng, the Western Cape and KwaZulu-Natal. In-transit and static protection are supported by K9, Bomb Disposal, Technical Support, Physical Security Compliance and High-Risk Operations personnel.

Visible policing

The Visible Policing Programme comprises the Crime Prevention, Border Security and Specialised Interventions subprogrammes, which are managed by the Visible Policing and the Operational Response Services divisions.

The Visible Policing Division provides direction on the effective combating of crime, through the provisioning of a visible policing service. The purpose of the division is to discourage all crime, by providing a proactive and responsive policing service, striving towards the reduction of crime levels and to instil community confidence in the SAPS.

The division deals with the strategic, tactical and operational approach in policing, to address the incidence of crime with the aim to reduce and combat crime, improve the SAPS's response time, enhance community mobilisation and partnerships, encourage victim-empowerment programmes, address the proliferation of firearms, address incidents of unlawful possession and the dealing in drugs, as well as the closure of markets for stolen goods.

Independent Police Investigative Directorate

The function of IPID is to ensure independent oversight of the SAPS and the municipal police services (MPS), conduct independent and impartial investigations of identified criminal offences allegedly committed by members of the SAPS and MPS, and make appropriate recommendations.

The IPID Act of 2011 grants the IPID an extended mandate and changes the focus of the its work from a complaints-driven organisation to one that prioritises the investigative function.

The Act further places stringent obligations on the SAPS and MPS to report matters that must be investigated by the directorate and ensure the implementation of the disciplinary recommendations of the directorate.

High-impact cases include, but are not limited to, corruption, systemic corruption, death while in police custody, death as a result of police action, rape by a police officer whether on or off duty, and rape while in police custody.

The directorate also investigates the occurrence of other criminal offences by the police such as assault, torture and discharge of an official firearm.

Defence

The Department of Defence (DoD) is required to provide, manage, prepare and employ defence capabilities that are commensurate with the needs of South Africa.

Over the medium term, the department will focus on arresting the decline in critical defence capabilities, participating in peace support operations, safeguarding South Africa's borders and territorial integrity, supporting the people of South Africa through collaboration with other departments, and refurbishing and maintaining infrastructure.

These activities support the realisation of Outcome 3 (all people in South Africa are and feel safe) and Outcome 11 (create a better South Africa, a better Africa and a better world) of government's 2014-2019 MTSF.

The primary role of the South African National Defence Force (SANDF) is to defend South Africa against external military aggression. In this regard deployment in an internal policing capacity is limited to exceptional circumstances and subject to parliamentary approval. The SANDF's core mandate is the protection of the country, its territorial integrity and its people.

As a sovereign state, South Africa has a duty to safeguard its borders against the possibility of transnational crime, international crime syndicates and cartels, the illegal flow of undocumented migrants and illicit economic activities.

The department was expected to deploy landward subunits to patrol South Africa's land borders with Zimbabwe, Eswatini, Mozambique, Lesotho, Botswana and Namibia.

Peace support

Peacekeeping missions are a critical element to respond to conflict, prevent conflict and deter potential aggressors.

The department also contributes to domestic safety and security by conducting internal operations such as border safeguarding and operations in support of other government departments.

Maritime safety and security

The South African Navy continues to prepare naval forces for operations in support of the maritime security strategy.

These operations involve ongoing maritime border patrols along the Mozambican channel to combat piracy.

A new hydrographic survey vessel will be used to conduct hydrographic research to produce nautical charts, and ensure safe navigation for military and civilian shipping.

The vessel also forms part of Operation Phakisa, an initiative to unlock the economic potential of South Africa's oceans.

Department of Military Veterans (DMV)

The DMV derives its mandate from the Military Veterans Act of 2011, which requires the department to provide national policy and standards on socio-economic support to military veterans and to their dependants, including benefits and entitlement to help realise a dignified, unified, empowered and self-sufficient community of military veterans.

The department continues to deliver key benefits such as housing, education, training and skills development, and access to healthcare to military veterans and their dependants.

Armaments Corporation of South Africa (Armcor)

The mission of Armcor is to meet the acquisition, maintenance and disposal needs of the DoD and other clients in terms of defence matériel, and related products and services.

The corporation maintains strategic capabilities and technologies, and promotes the local defence related industry, ensuring that the SANDF receives quality equipment to carry out its mandate.

To maintain competitiveness, the corporation aims to acquire capital assets such as armoured vehicles and helicopters in an economically viable manner.

Denel

Denel, a state-owned company, is the largest manufacturer of defence equipment in South Africa and operates in the military aerospace and landward defence environment.

It is an important defence contractor in its domestic market and a key supplier to the SANDF, both as original equipment

manufacturer and for the overhaul, maintenance, repair, refurbishment and upgrade of equipment in the SANDF's arsenal.

Intelligence services

The State Security Agency's (SSA) mandate is to provide government with intelligence on domestic, foreign or potential threats to national stability, the constitutional order, and the safety and well-being of its people. This enables government to implement and improve policies to deal with potential threats and to better understand existing threats.

The SSA comprises:

- the Domestic Branch (formerly the National Intelligence Agency)
- the Foreign Branch (formerly the South African Secret Service)
- the Intelligence Academy (formerly the South African National Academy of Intelligence)
- National Communications, which includes the former National Communications Centre, Office for Interception Centres and Electronic Communications Security (Pty) Ltd.

The SSA focuses on matters of national interest, including terrorism, sabotage, subversion, espionage and organised crime.

It also conducts vetting for all government departments in line with its counter-intelligence mandate to ensure secure conditions to enable departments and key state entities to do their work.





OFFICIAL GUIDE TO
South Africa
2018/19
Provinces

South Africa has been aptly described as a microcosm of the world, a place where civilisations meet. With its spectacular views, stunning wildlife and unbeatable biodiversity in contrast with its bustling modern cities, and vibrant economy, South Africa is often described as “A world in one country.”

The country has more than 290 conservation parks. It is home to almost 300 mammal species, and about 860 bird species, and 8 000 plant species.

The annual Sardine Run, also known as the “Greatest Shoal on Earth”, is the biggest migration on the planet sparked by the entry of large shoals of sardines into the waters of southern KwaZulu-Natal during the winter months.

There are 10 World Heritage sites and seven different biomes. It is considered the Cradle of Humankind and boasts 40% of all hominid finds on Earth. The country has a lot to offer in the form of places of interest and varying forms of amusement.

South Africa has nine provinces, which vary considerably in size. The smallest is tiny and crowded Gauteng, a highly urbanised region, and the largest the vast, arid and empty Northern Cape, which takes up almost a third of South Africa’s total land area.

Each province has its own Legislature, Premier and Executive Council. The country has common boundaries with Namibia, Botswana and Zimbabwe, while Mozambique and Eswatini lie to the north-east.

Completely enclosed by South African territory in the south-east is the mountain kingdom of Lesotho.

South Africa has three capitals:

- **Cape Town**, in the City of Cape Town metropolitan municipality, Western Cape, is the legislative capital and is where the country’s Parliament is found.
- **Bloemfontein**, in Mangaung metropolitan municipality, Free State, is the judicial capital and home to the Supreme Court of Appeal.
- **Pretoria**, in the City of Tshwane metropolitan municipality, Gauteng, is the administrative capital, and the ultimate capital of the country. It is home to the Union Buildings and a large proportion of the Public Service.

Eastern Cape

The Eastern Cape, lying on the south-eastern South African coast, is a region of great natural beauty, particularly the

rugged cliffs, rough seas and dense green bush of the stretch known as the Wild Coast. In the Eastern Cape, various floral habitats meet. Along the coast, the northern tropical forests intermingle with the more temperate woods of the south.

The province is serviced by airports situated in Port Elizabeth, East London, Mthatha and Bhisho.

Eastern Cape

Capital: Bhisho

Principal languages:

isiXhosa 82,7%

Afrikaans 10,3%

English 3,9%



Population: 6 712 276

Percentage share of the total population: 11,4%

Area: 168 966 km²

Source: Stats SA's *Mid-year population estimates 2019* and *Community Survey 2016*

Free State

The Free State, a province of wide horizons and blue skies, farmland, mountains, goldfields and widely dispersed towns, lies in the heart of South Africa.

Between the Vaal River in the north and the Orange River in the south, this immense rolling prairie stretches as far as the eye can see. Mining, particularly gold, is the biggest employer, followed by manufacturing.

The Free State also produces high-quality diamonds from its kimberlite pipes and fissures, and the country's largest deposit of bentonite is found in the Koppies district.

The National Development Plan has intensified the mining potential that still exists in the goldfields region of Matjhabeng in the Lejweleputswa District as a job intervention zone.

The capital, Bloemfontein, houses the Supreme Court of Appeal, a leading university and some top schools. Important towns include Welkom, Sasolburg, Odendaalsrus, Kroonstad, Parys, Phuthaditjhaba, Bethlehem.

The charming village of Clarens situated in the rolling foothills of the Maluti Mountains. Some of South Africa's most valued San rock art can be found in the Free State.

Other key tourist attractions in the province include the majestic Golden Gate National Park, the annual air show in Bethlehem, the Cherry Festival in Ficksburg, and the Fauresmith International Endurance Ride equestrian event.

The annual Mangaung African Cultural Festival, known as

Macufe, is hosted in partnership with the Tourism Authority and the Performing Arts Centre of the Free State.

The Vredefort Dome, 10 km in diameter, is on the United Nations' (UN) World Heritage Site List.

Free State

Capital: Bloemfontein

Principal languages:

Sesotho 71,9%

Afrikaans 10,9%

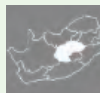
isiXhosa 5,7%

Population: 2 887 465

Percentage share of the total population: 4,9%

Area: 129 825 km²

Source: Stats SA's *Mid-year population estimates 2019* and *Community Survey 2016*



Gauteng

Gauteng is the economic centre of South Africa and the continent, responsible for over 40% of the country's total gross domestic product. Although it is the smallest of South Africa's nine provinces, Gauteng comprises the largest share of the South African population.

Financial and business services, logistics, manufacturing, property, telecommunications and trade are some of the most important economic sectors.

The province is an integrated industrial complex with major areas of economic activity in three subregional areas, namely the Vaal Triangle; the East, West and Central Rand, and Pretoria. Johannesburg houses the Johannesburg Stock Exchange Limited, the largest securities exchange in Africa.

Most overseas visitors enter South Africa via OR Tambo International Airport. Some 50 km north of Johannesburg lies Pretoria, the administrative capital of South Africa and home to the Union Buildings.

Gauteng

Capital: Johannesburg

Principal languages:

IsiZulu 23,0%

Afrikaans 10,1%

Sesotho 12,7%

English 11,3%

Population: 15 176 116

Percentage share of the total population: 25,8%

Area: 18 178 km²

Source: Stats SA's *Mid-year population estimates 2019* and *Community Survey 2016*



KwaZulu-Natal

KwaZulu-Natal, one of the country's most popular holiday destinations, is the province with the second largest population. This verdant region includes South Africa's lush subtropical east coast. Washed by the warm Indian Ocean, it stretches from Port Edward in the south, and northwards to the Mozambique boundary.

In addition to the magnificent coastline, there is the sweeping savanna in the east, and the majestic Drakensberg mountain range in the west that offers some of the country's most awe-inspiring landscapes.

Within the area is a vast 243 000-hectare sweep of basalt summits and buttresses. This section was formally granted World Heritage status in November 2000, and was renamed uKhahlamba-Drakensberg Park.

Visitors can enter the province through the King Shaka International Airport at La Mercy, north of Durban or use the extensive national road network. There are also two major harbours – the port of Durban, which is one the busiest in Africa, and Richards Bay, which is an important coal-export harbour.

There are several tertiary institutions of learning, such as the University of KwaZulu-Natal and the Durban Institute of Technology.

KwaZulu-Natal is the only province with a monarchy specifically provided for in the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996.

KwaZulu-Natal

Capital: Pietermaritzburg

Principal languages:

isiZulu	82,5%
English	12,5%
Afrikaans	1,0%



Population: 11 289 086

Percentage share of the total population: 19,2%

Area: 94 361 km²

Source: Stats SA's *Mid-year population estimates 2019* and *Community Survey 2016*

Limpopo

Limpopo, South Africa's northernmost province, borders onto Mozambique, Zimbabwe and Botswana, making it the ideal entrance to Africa. Named after the Limpopo River that flows along its northern border, the province is rich in wildlife, spectacular scenery and a wealth of historical and cultural treasures.

This province is in the Savanna Biome, an area of mixed grassland and trees, which is generally known as bushveld. The province's natural resources include more than 50 provincial reserves, as well as several private game reserves. The largest section of the Kruger National Park is situated along the eastern boundary of Limpopo with Mozambique.

Limpopo

Capital: Polokwane

Principal languages:

Sepedi 56,0%

Tshivenda 17,1%

Xitsonga 16,6%



Population: 5 982 584

Percentage share of the total population: 10,2%

Area: 125 755 km²

Source: Stats SA's Mid-year population estimates 2019 and Community Survey 2016

Mpumalanga

Mpumalanga means Place where the sun rises. Owing to its spectacular scenic beauty and abundance of wildlife, the province is one of South Africa's major tourist destinations. Mpumalanga falls mainly within the Grassland Biome. The escarpment and the Lowveld form a transitional zone between this grassland area and the Savanna Biome.

The area has a network of excellent roads and railway connections, making it highly accessible. Mpumalanga is also served by a number of small airports, such as the Kruger Mpumalanga International Airport.

Mbombela is the capital of the province and the administrative and business centre of the Lowveld. Other important towns are eMalahleni, Standerton, Piet Retief, Malalane, Ermelo, Barberton and Sabie.

Large-scale manufacturing occurs especially in the northern Highveld area, particularly chrome-alloy and steel manufacturing. The Barberton Makhonjwa Mountains were added to the UN Educational, Scientific and Cultural

Organization's prestigious World Heritage List in July 2018, becoming the 10th World Heritage Site for South Africa.

The site comprises 40% of the Barberton Greenstone Belt, one of the world's oldest geological structures. The Barberton Makhonjwa Mountains represent the best-preserved succession of volcanic and sedimentary rock dating back 3,25 to 3,6 billion years.

Mpumalanga

Capital: Nelspruit

Principal languages:

Siswati	29,1%
isiZulu	28,8%
Xitsonga	9,6%
isiNdebele	10,1%



Population: 4 592 187

Percentage share of the total population: 7,8%

Area: 76 495 km²

Source: Stats SA's *Mid-year population estimates 2019* and *Community Survey 2016*

Northern Cape

The Northern Cape is the largest province in South Africa, covering 31% of the country's surface area (slightly bigger than Germany). However, the Northern Cape remains the province with the smallest share of the South African population.

The province is noted for its San rock art, diamond diggings, 4X4 safaris and the Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park. It is a vast stretch of semi-desert land. The province is renowned for its spectacular display of spring flowers, which, for a short period every year, attracts thousands of tourists.

Sutherland hosts the southern hemisphere's largest astronomical observatory, the multinational-sponsored Southern African Large Telescope.

The Northern Cape is one of two sites to host the Square Kilometre Array radio-telescope (better known as the SKA Project), the largest and most advanced radio telescope in the world.

Among many other benefits, the province's tourism and hospitality industry is profiting from the project, as scientists and other interested parties are flooding into the town of Carnarvon. Electrical power generation presents an opportunity for greater economic diversification and growth in the province.

Northern Cape

Capital: Kimberley

Principal languages:

Afrikaans 56,8%

Setswana 33,4%



Population: 1 263 875

Percentage share of the total population: 2,2%

Area: 372 889 km²

Source: Stats SA's Mid-year population estimates 2019 and Community Survey 2016

North West

North West lies in the north of South Africa, on the Botswana border, fringed by the Kalahari desert in the west, Gauteng to the east, and the Free State to the south. Sun City, the Pilanesberg National Park, the Madikwe Game Reserve, the Cradle of Humankind Site, the Taung Heritage Site, the De Wildt Cheetah and Wildlife Trust and the Lesedi Cultural Village are some of the tourist attractions.

Some of the largest cattle herds in the world are found at Stellaland near Vryburg, which explains why this area is often referred to as the Texas of South Africa. Marico is also cattle country. North West is South Africa's major producer of white maize.

Mining contributes immensely to North West's economy and the South African mining industry. It is known as the Platinum Province due to its abundant mineral riches of platinum, chrome and the platinum group metals. It is also home to a strong dimension stone sector, due to the riches of its slate, marble and granite deposits.

The Rustenburg and Brits districts produce 94% of the country's platinum. In addition to granite, marble, fluorspar and diamonds, the province also produces a quarter of South

North West

Capital: Mahikeng

Principal languages:

Setswana 71,5%

Afrikaans 8,96%

isiXhosa 5,51%



Population: 4 027 160

Percentage share of the total population: 6,9%

Area: 104 882 km²

Source: Stats SA's Mid-year population estimates 2019 and Community Survey 2016

Africa's gold.

Western Cape

Situated on the south-western tip of Africa, the Western Cape with its wide beaches and breathtaking scenery, complemented by a rich variety of cultures, historical landmarks, world-class restaurants and entertainment, is a world-famous tourist destination.

Table Mountain, the Cape winelands, Robben Island and the Kirstenbosch Botanical Gardens are among the province's most popular tourist attractions.

The Western Cape is also known for its floral diversity. The Cape Floristic Region World Heritage Site comprising eight separate protected areas, covers an area of more than 553 000 ha stretching from the Cape Peninsula to the Eastern Cape. The Knysna-Tsitsikamma region has the country's biggest indigenous forests.

Cape Town has proved again that it is a film-friendly destination and it is reaping the benefits.

Western Cape

Capital: Cape Town

Principal languages:

Afrikaans	46,6%
isiXhosa	31,1%
English	19,6%



Population: 6 844 272

Percentage share of the total population: 11,6%

Area: 129 462 km²

Source: Stats SA's *Mid-year population estimates 2019* and *Community Survey 2016*





OFFICIAL GUIDE TO
South Africa
2018/19
**Science and
Innovation**

The National Development Plan (NDP) acknowledges that science, technology and innovation (STI) are crucial to enabling broad-based socio-economic development through a skilled and innovative population.

This is expressed in terms of Outcome 5 (a skilled and capable workforce to support an inclusive growth path) and Outcome 6 (an efficient, competitive and responsive economic infrastructure network) of government's 2014-2019 Medium Term Strategic Framework.

Following the reconfiguration of government departments in June 2019, the Department of Science and Technology (DST) was renamed the Department of Science and Innovation (DSI). The department is furthering its ability to take advantage of rapid technological change to build a prosperous nation.

The 2019 *White Paper on STI* notes that the Fourth Industrial Revolution (4IR) is based on three sets of megatrends – physical, digital and biological – and involves a convergence of technologies and disciplines that is having a multisystem impact.

In recent years, the then DST has enabled the development of individual 4IR technologies such as nanotechnology, biotechnology, information and communications technologies (ICT), robotics, photonics and additive manufacturing.

In response to the 4IR and its disruptions, government has developed a new policy framework for science and technology which is contained in the new *White Paper on Science and Technology and Innovation*, adopted by Cabinet in March 2019, which is aligned to the NDP.

To realise the objectives of the new White Paper, government was expected to develop a Decadal Plan on Science Technology and Innovation (STI), which would serve as an implementation plan over the period 2020-2030.

The DSI has initiated the Converging Technologies Platform (CTP) to introduce a more collaborative approach between technologies.

The overall vision of the CTP is to fuse the assets of the national system of innovation (NSI) in order to create an innovation explosion that will result in greater and increased socio-economic impact for the benefit of all South Africans.

The department's Centre for Artificial Intelligence Research programme conducts foundational, directed and applied research into various aspects of artificial intelligence.

Producing new knowledge

The DSI is committed to strengthening research and innovation competencies and programmes that form the strategic foundation for scientific innovation.

It has invested in the industrial, health and agricultural sectors, as well as in the development of indigenous knowledge applications, which particularly seek to find solutions to the disposal of industrial and municipal waste; facilitate the development of biopharmaceuticals, vaccines and biofuels; and improve crop production.

The National Space Strategy aims to promote the peaceful use of space; support the creation of an environment conducive to industrial development in space technology; foster research in space science, communications, navigation and space physics; and advance scientific, engineering and technological competencies in spacerelated activities.

This will ensure that South Africa captures a reasonable share of the global space market, which involves economic activities related to manufacturing components that enter the earth's orbit or go beyond.

In December 2018, South Africa launched into space the continent's most advanced nanosatellite, the ZACube-2, to help monitor the ocean traffic as part of the Oceans Economy, and to also monitor veld fires and provide near real-time fire information to ensure a quick response time by disaster management teams.

Research, innovation and infrastructure

The availability of adequate infrastructure is vital for the NSI to be globally competitive. This infrastructure includes research equipment, pilot plants (small production plants that test processes before they are commercialised), technology demonstrators (proof concepts to showcase possible applications, feasibility, performance and methods of ideas for new technologies), and facilities for specialised sectors such as aerospace.

The National Integrated Cyber-infrastructure System, implemented by the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research, supports the successful and sustainable implementation of national projects such as MeerKAT and the Square Kilometre Array (SKA), as well as large research infrastructure dependent on the presence of a robust cyber-infrastructure system.

The department also support scientific research in strategic research areas defined by South Africa's geographic advantage, such as palaeosciences, astronomy, climate change, marine and polar research, and indigenous knowledge.

The department is expected to invest in a range of ICT initiatives such as artificial intelligence, nanotechnology, quantum computing and biotechnology, many of which are essential for South Africa to exploit the opportunities associated with the fourth industrial revolution.

It is also driving the pursuit of new sectors and sources of growth while endeavouring to the green economy. The Biorefinery Innovation Programme aims to enhance the competitiveness of these sugar and forestry sectors by developing technologies to produce new renewable products from agricultural feedstocks.

The DSI has initiated a new Carbon Capture Storage and Use RDI Flagship Programme, which aims to integrate aspects of digitisation and the circular economy in order to extract chemical elements from waste gases in an environmentally sustainable manner.

By combining a selected suite of local and international technologies, and involving the triple helix of government, academia and industry, the programme seeks to demonstrate the possibility of converting the carbon dioxide contained in coal-fired power station flue gases into multiple chemical commodity streams using green ammonia and green hydrogen.

The programme aims to address multiple environmental, economic and societal challenges while enabling the country to extract maximum value from its vast coal resources in a sustainable and environmentally friendly manner.

MeerKAT

The 64-dish MeerKAT radio telescope, situated some 90 km outside the small Northern Cape town of Carnarvon, is a precursor to the Square Kilometre Array (SKA) telescope.

The mega infrastructure project continues to generate new findings that are adding to the global body of radio astronomy knowledge.

Square Kilometre Array

The SKA project is an important endeavour for Africa, with huge potential to contribute to and raise the profile of science, technology and innovation. The SKA Project is an international enterprise to build the largest and most sensitive radio telescope in the world, and will be located in Africa and Australia.

Supported by 10 member countries – Australia, Canada, China, India, Italy, New Zealand, South Africa, Sweden, The Netherlands and the United Kingdom – SKA Organisation has brought together some of the world's finest scientists, engineers and policy makers and more than 100 companies and research institutions across 20 countries in the design and development of the telescope.

Hydrogen Fuel Cell Technology (HFCT)

Local HFCT development holds the promise of boosting manufacturing capacity and competitiveness in South Africa.

This forms part of the technologies which seek to boost the economy and create much-needed jobs. HFCT has been identified as a clean and reliable alternative energy source to fossil fuels.

Titanium metal powder project

Government supports the Titanium Metal Powder Project, which has a potentially significant economic impact for South Africa. Titanium is used in industries such as aerospace, medical applications, transport and chemical processing to create high-performance, lightweight parts.

The titanium powder is also used in 3D printing, which is considered an alternative mode of manufacturing.

National Bio-economy Strategy

The Bio-economy Strategy positions bio-innovation as essential to the achievement of government's industrial and social development goals.

The strategy provides a high-level framework to guide biosciences research and innovation investments, as well as decision-making as South Africa adapts to the realities of global transition to a low-carbon economy.

Through the Bio-economy Strategy, bio-innovation would be used to generate sustainable economic, social and environmental development.

The DSI was aiming to have biotechnology make up 5% of the country's gross domestic product by 2050.

The strategy focused on three sectors namely agriculture, health and industrial applications and is also closely linked to other policies such as the Industrial Policy Action Plan, the NDP and the New Growth Path.

Entities

Academy of Science of South Africa (ASSAf)

The ASSAf aspires to be the apex organisation for science and scholarship in South Africa, recognised and connected both nationally and internationally.

The ASSAf recognises and rewards excellence; promotes innovation and scholarly activity; provides effective, evidence-based scientific advice to government and other stakeholders; promotes public interest in and awareness of science and science education; and promotes national, regional and international linkages.

Council for Scientific and Industrial Research

The CSIR is a world-class African research and development organisation, which was established through in 1945. It undertakes directed, multidisciplinary research and technological innovation that contributes to the improved quality of life of South Africans.

The organisation plays a key role in supporting government's programmes through directed research that is aligned with the country's priorities, the organisation's mandate, and its science, engineering and technology areas of competence.

Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC)

The HSRC is mandated to initiate, undertake and foster strategic basic and applied policy research in the human sciences, and to gather, analyse and publish data relevant to developmental challenges in South Africa, elsewhere in Africa and in the rest of the world.

National Advisory Council on Innovation (NACI)

The NACI is a statutory advisory board that advises on the role and contribution of science, mathematics, innovation and technology in promoting and achieving national objectives.

National Research Foundation (NRF)

The primary objective of the NRF is to contribute to the improvement of the quality of life of all the people of the country through the promotion of a knowledge economy based on the generation, transfer and use of knowledge.

The organisation promotes and supports research through the provision of grants and bursaries, research infrastructure, international and industry collaboration opportunities and mobility through all the stages of a researcher's career, across the spectrum of basic, applied, and strategic research, with an appropriate mix of programmes and funding mechanisms, in alignment to national priorities.

South African Council for Natural Scientific Professions (SACNASP)

The SACNASP is the regulatory body for natural science practitioners (professional natural scientists, natural scientists in training, natural science technologists and natural science technologists in training) in South Africa.

South African National Space Agency (SANSA)

SANSA is mandated to promote the peaceful use of space; support the creation of an environment conducive to industrial development in space technology; foster research in space science, communications, navigation and space physics; advance scientific, engineering and technological competencies and capabilities through human capital development, outreach programmes and infrastructure development; and foster international cooperation in space-related activities.

SANSA provides space weather knowledge, expertise, products and services through the SANSA Space Weather Centre, which is the only Regional Warning Centre for Africa under the International Space Environment Service.

It is also the only organisation performing compass swings in South Africa, making it an invaluable service to the nation and ensuring the safety of thousands of planes every year.

Technology Innovation Agency (TIA)

TIA is mandated to provide customer-centric technology development funding and support, to provide an enabling

environment for technology innovation in collaboration with other role players, and to develop an effective and efficient internal environment for the execution of the strategy.

Research and science bodies

South African Bureau of Standards (SABS)

The SABS provides standardisation and conformity assessment services to protect the integrity of the South African market, protect consumers, create a competitive advantage for South African industry, and facilitate access by South Africans to local and international markets. The bureau is the sole publisher of South African national standards.

National Intellectual Property Management Office (NIPMO)

NIPMO provides support to the offices of technology transfer at publicly funded research institutions, which has led to significantly improved intellectual property management in universities and other research institutions.

Agricultural Research Council (ARC)

The ARC conducts fundamental and applied research with partners to generate knowledge, develop human capital, and foster innovation in agriculture by developing technology and disseminating information.

Mintek

Mintek, South Africa's national mineral research organisation, develops appropriate and innovative technology for transfer to the minerals industry; and provides the industry with test work, consultancy, analytics and mineralogical services.

Council for Geoscience (CGS)

As a scientific research council, the CGS provides for the promotion of research and the extension of knowledge in the field of geoscience as well as the provision of specialised geoscientific services.

South African Medical Research Council

The SAMRC is an independent statutory body that coordinates health and medical research activities throughout South Africa. The scope of the organisation's research projects includes tuberculosis, HIV and AIDS, cardiovascular and

non-communicable diseases, gender and health, and alcohol and other drug abuse.

With a strategic objective to help strengthen the health systems of the country, in line with that of the Department of Health, the SAMRC constantly identifies the main causes of death in South Africa.

National Health Laboratory Service (NHLS)

The NHLS is the largest diagnostic pathology service in South Africa with the responsibility of supporting the national and provincial health departments in the delivery of healthcare.

The NHLS provides laboratory and related public health services to over 80% of the population through a national network of laboratories. Its specialised divisions include the National Institute for Communicable Diseases, National Institute for Occupational Health, National Cancer Registry and Antivenom Unit.

Bureau for Economic Research (BER)

The BER primarily focuses on the South African macro economy and selected economic sectors. It monitors and forecasts macroeconomic economic and sector trends, and identifies and analyses local and international factors that affect South African businesses.

National Institute for Tropical Diseases

The National Institute for Tropical Diseases in Tzaneen, Limpopo, is responsible for the ongoing assessment of malaria-control programmes carried out by various authorities in South Africa. A malaria-reference service is also provided. Malaria tests are carried out by the institute, and statistical analyses of data pertaining to the programme is undertaken.

South Africa's National Energy Development Institute (SANEDI)

The main function of SANEDI is to direct, monitor and conduct applied energy research and development, demonstration and deployment as well to undertake specific measures to promote the uptake of Green Energy and Energy Efficiency in South Africa.

National Agricultural Research Forum (NARF)

The mission of the NARF is to facilitate consensus and integrate coordination in the fields of research, development, and technology transfer to agriculture in order to enhance national economic growth, social welfare and environmental sustainability.

Water Research Commission (WRC)

The WRC aims to develop and support a water-related knowledge base in South Africa, with all the necessary competencies and capacity vested in the corps of experts and practitioners within academia, science councils, other research organisations and government organisations (central, provincial and local) which serve the water sector.

The WRC provides the country with applied knowledge and water-related innovation, by continuously translating needs into research ideas and, in turn, transferring research results and disseminating knowledge and new technology-based products and processes to end-users.

Institute for Water Research (IWR)

The IWR is a multidisciplinary research department of Rhodes University. The objectives of the IWR are to contribute to the knowledge of and promote the understanding and wise use of natural water resources in southern Africa.

South African Environmental Observation Network (SAEON)

SAEON is a research facility that establishes and maintains nodes (environmental observatories, field stations or sites) linked by an information management network to serve as research and education platforms for long-term studies of ecosystems that will provide for incremental advances in the understanding of ecosystems and the ability to detect, predict and react to environmental change.

Fluorspar industry

South Africa has the world's largest reserves of fluorspar, with estimated reserves of 41 million tons. The country supplies around 10% of the flouride requirements to the global flourochemicals industry.



OFFICIAL GUIDE TO South Africa

2018/19

Social Development



The mandate of the Department of Social Development (DSD) is to provide social protection services and lead government efforts to forge partnerships through which vulnerable individuals, groups and communities become capable and self-reliant participants in their own development.

Other pieces of legislation which define the department's mandate include the:

- **Non-Profit Organisations (NPOs) Act of 1997**, which establishes an administrative and regulatory framework within which non-profit organisations can conduct their affairs, and provides for their registration by the department.
- **Older Persons Act of 2006**, which establishes a framework for empowering and protecting older persons, and promoting and maintaining their status, rights, well-being, safety and security. It provides for older persons to enjoy good quality services while staying with their families in their communities for as long as possible. It also makes provision for older persons to live in residential care facilities.
- **Children's Act of 2005**, which sets out principles relating to the care and protection of children, and defines parental responsibilities and rights. It deals with early childhood development (ECD), drop-in centres and early intervention, children in alternative care such as foster care, child and youth care centres and the adoption of children. The national ECD policy aims to define the provision of equitable ECD services in South Africa.
- **Prevention of and Treatment for Substance Abuse Act of 2008**, which regulates substance abuse services and facilities.
- **1998 White Paper on Population Policy for South Africa**, which is aimed at promoting the sustainable development of all South Africans by integrating population issues with development planning in all spheres of government and all sectors of society.
- **2015 White Paper on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities**, which focuses on putting in place measures that will reduce the exclusion and inequality experienced by persons with disabilities. This includes contributing towards fighting poverty among persons with disabilities and their families, and providing policy guidelines on building capacity in the public sector to deliver equitable and accessible services.

- **1997 White Paper for Social Welfare**, which sets out the principles, guidelines, policies and programmes for developmental social welfare in South Africa. It provides the foundation for social welfare in the post-1994 era.
- **Social Service Professions Act of 1978**, which provides for the regulation of social service professionals.
- **Victim Empowerment Support Services Bill**, which is aimed at regulating victim support services and empowering victims.

The department is also the custodian of international human rights treaties that the country has ratified, focusing on protecting the rights of children, people with disabilities and older people. This includes coordinating the implementation of these treaties, and compiling periodic country reports.

In addressing the critical challenges of poverty, unemployment and inequality, over the medium term, the DSD intends to focus on deepening social assistance and extending the scope of social security; reforming the social welfare sector and its services to deliver better results and strengthening community development interventions.

This work gives expression to the National Development Plan's vision of improving the short- and long-term prospects of current and future generations, and Outcome 13 (an inclusive and responsive social protection system) of government's 2014-2019 Medium Term Strategic Framework.

Social assistance and security

To alleviate the high rate of poverty in South Africa, government has institutionalised a comprehensive social protection system.

This includes unconditional cash transfers, most of which are aimed at supporting poor individuals from vulnerable demographic groups, such as children, older people and people with disabilities.

According to National Treasury's 2019 *Estimates of National Expenditure*, in 2018/19, 17.6 million beneficiaries received monthly grants, and it is estimated that 18.7 million beneficiaries will receive social grants in 2021/22.

The bulk of these are allocated to the Child Support Grant (CSG), which currently benefits 12.5 million poor children, and the Old-Age Grant, which benefits 3.5 million people older than 60.

For two successive financial years, the social assistance programme has shown growth, with total uptake increasing by 1,7 % between 2017/18 and 2018/19.

The Older Persons Grant grew by 3.8% while the CSG by 1.5%. At the same time, there was an increase in the number of adult beneficiaries in need of regular care and support in the form of Grant-In-Aid, which grew by 15.5%.

These figures show that the increase is mainly amongst the grants targeting the most vulnerable groups – children and older persons.

The national prevalence of disability is 7.5%, and, as such, the disability grant, of R1 700 per month in 2018/19, was provided to more than one million people. By the end of 2019/20, the department plans to have operationalised an inspectorate tasked with maintaining the integrity of the social assistance framework and systems through detecting and investigating fraud.

The introduction of the inspectorate is expected to result in a decrease in the number of these fraud and corruption cases referred to law enforcement agencies, from 101 cases in 2017/18 at an estimated value of R6.3 million.

According to Statistics South Africa's (Stats SA) General Household Survey (GHS) of 2018, the percentage of individuals that benefited from social grants consistently increased from 12,8% in 2003 to 31,0% in 2018.

Simultaneously, the percentage of households that received at least one social grant increased from 30,8% in 2003 to 44,3% in 2018. Grants were the second most important source of income (45,2%) for households after salaries (64,8%), and the main source of income for almost one-fifth (19,9%) of households nationally.

A larger percentage of households received grants compared to salaries as a source of income in Eastern Cape (59,9% versus 52,6%) and Limpopo (57,9% versus 51,3%). Grants were particularly important as a main source of income for households in Eastern Cape (35,0%), Limpopo (30,4%) and Northern Cape (29,8%).

Grant beneficiaries were most common in the Eastern Cape (41,9%), Limpopo (40,1%), Northern Cape (38,0%) and KwaZulu-Natal (36,5%). By comparison, only 19,2% of individuals in Gauteng and 22,1% in Western Cape were beneficiaries.

More than one-third of black African individuals (33,9%) received a social grant, compared to 29,9% of coloured individuals, and 12,5% of Indian/Asian individuals. By comparison, only 7,5% of the white population received grants.

Households that received at least one type of grant were most common in Eastern Cape (59,0%), Northern Cape (57,4%), Limpopo (56,7%) and Free State (50,7%) and least common in Gauteng (30,1%) and Western Cape (36,7%).

Some 21,3% of all individuals and 34,0% of all households in metropolitan areas received some kind of social grant (compared to 31,0% of individuals and 44,3% of households nationally).

Large differences are noted between cities. Nearly three-tenths of individuals in Buffalo City (30,6%) and Nelson Mandela Bay (28,6%) benefitted from social grants, compared to less than one-fifth in Ekurhuleni and City of Cape Town (both 19,2%), City of Tshwane (18,9%) and City of Johannesburg (18,7%).

A similar pattern can be observed for households at metropolitan level. Figure 7.3 shows that the reception of one or more social grants was most common for households in Buffalo City (47,9%) and Nelson Mandela Bay (45,4%) and least common in Tshwane (27,5%) and the City of Johannesburg (29,0%).

Nationally, salaries (64,8%) and grants (45,2%) were the most common sources of income reported by households.

Provincially, the largest percentage of households that earned salaries were found in the Western Cape (77,4%) and Gauteng (73,9%). Grants were more prevalent than salaries as a source of income in Eastern Cape (59,9%) and Limpopo (57,9%). Remittances as a source of income played an important role in most provinces, but especially in Limpopo (24,2%), Eastern Cape (22,8%), North West (21,4%), and Mpumalanga (20,2%).

Reforming the social welfare sector

A key component of Outcome 13 (an inclusive and responsive social protection system) of government's 2014-2019 MTSF involves reforming and standardising the social welfare system.

To enable this, the department concluded its review of the 1997 *White Paper for Social Welfare* in 2016/17, and the development of a new white paper began in 2017/18.

This process will inform the development and enactment of a Social Development Act, which will provide measures and a uniform system for the promotion and provision of social development services across all sectors.

The Social Service Practitioners Bill is expected to replace the Social Service Professions Act of 1978 in 2020/21.

The Bill is aimed at extending the scope of regulation to include emerging social service occupations such as community development practitioners, and child and youth care workers.

Role players

National Development Agency (NDA)

The NDA's primary focus is on strengthening the institutional capacity of civil-society organisations that provide services to poor communities. The agency also promotes consultation and dialogue between civil society and the State, debates policy development, and conducts research.

South African Social Security Agency (SASSA)

The objectives of SASSA are to ensure the effective and efficient administration, management, and payment of social assistance grants.

The agency's core business is to administer and pay social assistance transfers. It has a large network of centres where citizens can apply for social grants, and manages a large payment system of more than 17 million monthly social grants.

Programmes and projects

Increasing access to ECD

The department's ECD programme is intended to address inequality and human development challenges. The country's integrated ECD policy aims to ensure deliberate and coordinated efforts to help improve children's chances of having a better life.

Research indicates that the first few years in a child's life are the most important for development. An estimated 83% of children aged from three to five who form part of the richest 20% of households are accessing preschool programmes, compared to only 58% of the children of the same age group who form part of the poorest 20 per cent of households.

Addressing this imbalance requires increasing access to quality ECD services by improving and maintaining infrastructure, and subsidising centres that offer ECD services to children from poor households.

Tackling substance abuse

The DSD has four new substance abuse treatment centres to provide inpatient treatment in Eastern Cape, North West, Free State and Northern Cape. Their establishment underscores the department's commitment to preventing and treating drug abuse through the implementation of the comprehensive National Anti-Substance Abuse Programme of Action.

Fight against gender-based violence (GBV)

On 10 July 2018, government organised the historic 100 Men March for No Violence Against Women and Children in Pretoria to raise awareness about the scourge of violence against women and children.

The march was organised in partnership with various civil-society formations representing business, labour, faith-based organisations and NPOs. The march also served as an invitation to all men and boys to respond to the "Send Me – Thuma Mina" rallying call and take a stand against the scourge of violence and abuse.

The 100 Men March was followed by a #TotalShutDown March on 1 August 2018, which saw women in their thousands marching in various locations across the country in an effort to raise awareness on the rampant killing of women and children.

Government, in partnership with civil-society organisations, held a Presidential Summit Against GBV and Femicide in Centurion on 1 and 2 November 2018 to develop a national plan of action against GBV.

The summit was an opportunity to share experiences and find collective solutions to end violence and abuse in communities. The outcome of the summit, which included a declaration, will guide government and all stakeholders to end violence against women and children.

The **GBV Command Centre (GBVCC)** is a 24-hour call centre that was launched in March 2014 to provide immediate, consistent, coordinated and timely support and counselling to victims of GBV. The GBVCC is linked to the services of the police, emergency medical services and the Department of Health.

The toll-free number to call to speak to a social worker for assistance and counselling is 0800 428 428 (0800 GBV GBV). Callers can also request a social worker from the GBVCC to contact them by dialling *120*7867# (free) from any cellphone.

The GBVCC uses technology to geographically locate a caller from a mobile phone in order to determine the resources nearest to the caller such as a social worker, a police station, a hospital or safe house.

Thuthuzela Care centres are one-stop facilities that have been introduced as a critical part of South Africa's anti-rape strategy, aiming to reduce secondary victimisation and to build a case ready for successful prosecution.

Khuseleka One-Stop centres, which are open 24-hours-a-day, provide services such as trauma counselling and psychological support, healthcare, legal assistance and shelter for victims of abuse. The name Khuseleka is derived from the isiZulu word which means 'protection'.

The **South African Police Service** has victim-friendly rooms at certain police stations where victims of GBV are interviewed for statement taking. The private rooms provide a friendly environment that assures confidentiality, respect and dignity.

Access to food

Stats SA's GHS of 2018 has shown that the percentage of persons that experienced hunger decreased from 29,3% in 2002 to 11,3% in 2018.

The percentage of households who were vulnerable to hunger reflects the same pattern as experienced by persons as it declined from 24,2% in 2002 to 9,7% in 2018, including a spell during which the percentage increased to 13,2% in 2008 before continuing its decline.

According to the survey, the percentage of households that had limited access to food decreased from 23,6% in 2010 to 20,2% in 2018. Simultaneously, the percentage of persons with more limited access to food declined from 29,1% in 2010 to 23,8% in 2018.

Food access problems were the most common in North West where 36,6% of households had inadequate or severely inadequate food access. Inadequate or severely inadequate access to food were also observed in Northern Cape (32,3%), Mpumalanga (28,4%), and Eastern Cape (25,4%).

Some 15,7% of households that lived in metropolitan areas had experienced inadequate or severely inadequate access to food during the preceding year.

Food access problems were most common in the City of Cape Town (27,5%), Nelson Mandela Bay (23,4%) and Mangaung (23,2%).

HIV and AIDS support

South Africa is continually striving to do more to stop new HIV infections and prevent AIDS-related deaths. The National Strategic Plan (NSP) on HIV, Sexually Transmitted Infections and Tuberculosis (2017-2022) under the slogan “Let Our Actions Count”, guides the country’s response to these infections, seeks to reduce new HIV infections by 63% – from 270 000 in 2016 to less than 100 000 by 2022.

Spending on HIV and AIDS-related support, prevention and mitigation programmes also forms a large part of transfers to NPOs, and the South African National AIDS Council has partnered with the DSD in the selection of NPOs to undertake HIV and AIDS prevention and psychosocial support programmes.

According to Stats SA’s *Mid-year population estimates* of 2019, for 2019, an estimated 13,5% of the total South African population is HIV positive. Over a fifth of South African women in their reproductive ages (15-49 years) are HIV positive.

HIV prevalence among the youth aged 15-24 has remained fairly stable over time. The total number of persons living with HIV in South Africa increased from an estimated 4,64 million in 2002 to 7,97 million by 2019. For adults aged 15-49 years, an estimated 19,07% of the population is HIV positive.

People with disabilities

The *2015 White Paper on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities* (WPRPD) calls for government, civil society and the private sector to work together to ensure the socio-economic inclusion of persons with disabilities.

Government seeks to create a caring and inclusive society that protects and develops the human potential of its children, a society for all where persons with disabilities enjoy the same rights as their fellow citizens, and where all citizens and institutions share equal responsibility for building such a society.

The WPRPD is intended to accelerate transformation and redress regarding full inclusion, integration and equality for persons with disabilities.

South Africa has been celebrating the annual International Day for Persons with Disabilities since 1997. According to Stats SA’s GHS of 2018, some 4,4% of South Africans aged five years and older were classified as disabled in 2018.

A larger percentage of women (4,7%) than men (4,0%) were classified as disabled. Limpopo (6,5%), Northern Cape and North West (both 6,4%) presented the highest prevalence of disability in the country.

Since older populations are more likely to have a higher prevalence of disability, the lower prevalence in Gauteng (3,0%) and Western Cape (3,5%) could be ascribed to the relatively youthful population that is often associated with net in-migration in these provinces.

National Youth Policy (NYP)

The NYP for 2015-2020 (NYP 2020) focuses on redressing the wrongs of the past and addressing the specific challenges and immediate needs of the country's youth.

The policy seeks to create an environment that enables the young people of South Africa to reach their potential. It outlines interventions to enable the optimal development of young people, both as individuals and as members of South African society, enhancing their capabilities to transform the economy and the country.

This will be achieved by addressing their needs; promoting positive outcomes, opportunities, choices and relationships; and providing the support necessary to develop all young people, particularly those outside the social, political and economic mainstream.

The NYP 2020 emphasises the need for various youth development efforts and interventions that holistically respond to all aspects or spheres of young people's lives.

Blind SA

Blind SA is an organisation for the blind and is governed by the blind. Situated in Johannesburg, it is aligned with other member organisations throughout South Africa.

The organisation provides, among other things, study bursaries for visually impaired students for further education, Braille publications in all of South Africa's official languages, Braille training that entails writing and reading, and orientation and mobility training.

South African Braille Authority (SABA)

The SABA was established in May 2012 as an NGO. Its purpose is to set and maintain standards for Braille in all 11 official languages of South Africa.

South African National Council for the Blind (SANCB)

The SANCB is the coordinating body for over 100-member organisations throughout South Africa. These organisations span the full spectrum of services offered for and to blind and partially sighted persons.

Support for the hearing impaired

South Africa's national organisation for the hearing impaired is the Deaf Federation of South Africa (DeafSA), formerly the South African National Council for the Deaf, which was established in 1929.

DeafSA has nine provincial chapters throughout South Africa. An estimated 500 000 to 600 000 South Africans use South African Sign Language.

Other private organisations include the National Institute for the Deaf and the South African National Deaf Association.

Older people

The Older Persons Act of 2006 aims to enhance the quality of life and improve the health of older persons by engaging them in programmes that promote social, physical, mental and emotional well-being to prevent or delay the onset of ageing challenges and keep old age related illness at bay.

The Older Persons' Parliament takes place annually in October. It gives elders the opportunity to engage with the executive on critical issues affecting their lives.

According to Stats SA's GHS of 2018, about 9,0% (5,3 million) of the South African population is 60 years or older. Of the elderly (those aged 60 years and older), the highest percentage 23,9% (1,27 million) reside in Gauteng.

The proportion of elderly persons aged 60 and older is increasing over time.

CHILD





OFFICIAL GUIDE TO
South Africa

2018/19

**Sports,
Arts and
Culture**

Following the reconfiguration of government departments in June 2019, the new Ministry of Sports, Arts and Culture is now responsible for the new Department of Sports, Arts and Culture (DSAC). This department arises from a merger between the Department of Sport and Recreation and the Department of Arts and Culture (DAC).

The department oversees the development, management and promotion of sports, arts and culture in South Africa. Its work to increase the accessibility of sport and recreation contributes to the achievement of the National Development Plan's goals of nation-building, social cohesion and a healthy national lifestyle, and Outcome 14 (a diverse, socially cohesive society with a common national identity) of government's 2014-2019 Medium Term Strategic Framework.

Role players **Boxing South Africa (BSA)**

The BSA administers professional boxing, recognises amateur boxing, creates synergy between professional and amateur boxing, and promotes interaction between associations of boxers, managers, promoters and trainers.

South African Institute for Drug-Free Sport (SAIDS)

The SAIDS promotes participation in sport without the use of prohibited performance enhancing substances and methods, and educates sportspeople on fair play and the harmful effects of the use of prohibited performance enhancing substances and methods.

South African Sports Confederation and Olympic Committee

SASCOC is the national multi-coded sporting body responsible for the preparation, presentation and performance of teams to all multi-coded events, namely the Olympic Games, Paralympic Games, Commonwealth Games, World Games, All Africa Games, Olympic Youth Games, Commonwealth Youth Games and Zone VI Games.

It also look after the various national federations affiliated to it, together with the various provincial sports councils. SASCOC is responsible for the awarding for National Protea Colours to athletes/officials who have met the criteria to represent South Africa in different sporting codes and arenas.

South Africa is also represented on the Association of National Olympic Committees of Africa and on the Confederation of Southern African National Olympic Committees.

World Anti-Doping Agency (WADA)

The Africa Regional Office of the WADA was established in Cape Town in 2004 to coordinate the anti-doping activities of the agency throughout Africa.

This includes promoting and maintaining effective lines of communication between the WADA and all relevant stakeholders, governments and public authorities, the broad sports movement, national anti-doping agencies and laboratories.

South Africa continues to serve as the African representative on the Executive Committee of WADA.

Programmes and projects **Athletics South Africa (ASA) Development**

The ASA Development Programme is one of the largest and most effective programmes in the world. Athletics is a labour-intensive sport which requires substantial resources to engage large quantities of athletes, coaches, officials and administrators at all levels of participation.

In preparation for the 2020 and 2024 Olympic Games, ASA has squads comprising more than 300 athletes at senior, junior and youth level.

Major events **Big Walk**

The Big Walk is staged on the first Sunday of October to encourage participation in physical activity. The annual Big Walk takes place in October. It is aligned with The Association for International Sport for All World Walking Day, which encourages and lobbies countries to walk by creating advocacy and awareness during October.

Annual National Recreation Day

Although not a public holiday, the day provides an opportunity to all South Africans to be actively involved by participating in recreation activities that will improve their health and well-being.

National Indigenous Games

The National Indigenous Games festival forms part of South Africa's annual heritage celebrations and brings people from culturally diverse backgrounds together. The popularity of the festival in recent years has contributed to an increase in the number of active participants in sport and recreation events.

The games played included *khokho*, *intonga*, *ncuva*, *morabaraba*, *diketo*, *drie stokkies*, *kgati*, *dibeke* and *juskei*, all of which are indigenous to South Africa. By mid-2019, *Skop die Bal* was being scoped as the 10th code.

South African Sports Awards (SASA)

The **13th SASA** ceremony was held in Bloemfontein, Free State in November 2018.

The winners were:

- **Sportsman of the Year** – Chad Le Clos.
- **Sportswoman of the Year** – Caster Semenya.
- **Sportsman of the Year with a Disability** – Ndodomzi Jonathan Ntutu.
- **People's Choice Sports Star Award** – Caster Semenya.
- **Sportswoman of the Year with a Disability** – Anrune Liebenberg.
- **Team of the Year** – Banyana Banyana.
- **Coach of the Year** – Samuel Sepeng.
- **Volunteer of the Year** – Linda Hlophe.
- **Newcomer of the Year** – Tatjan Schoenmaker.
- **Indigenous Games Team of the Year** – Morabaraba Team.
- **Photographer of the Year** – Steve Haag.
- **Sports Journalist Year** – Motshidisi Mohono.
- **National Federation of the Year** – Softball.
- **Sport Administrator of the Year** – Virginia Mabaso.
- **Recreation Body of the Year** – Mavu Sport Development.
- **School Team of the Year** – St Benedict's College.
- **Developing School Team of the Year** – Machakela-Mamodibo Secondary School.

Major sporting activities Sporting codes

Major sporting codes in South Africa include, among others: Athletics; Biking; Mountain Biking; Cycling; Boxing; Cricket; Canoeing; Rowing; Golf; Hockey; Ice Hockey; Motorsport; Flying; Netball; Rugby; Running (including South Africa's two

world-renowned ultra-marathons – the Comrades Marathon in KwaZulu-Natal and the Two Oceans Marathon in the Western Cape); Soccer; Surfing; Sailing; Swimming; Tennis, and Chess. South Africa will host the Netball World Cup in 2023, in Cape Town. This is a historic first for the sport in Africa.

Arts and Culture

The then DAC has been contributing to sustainable economic development and enhancing job creation by preserving, protecting and developing South African arts, culture and heritage to sustain a socially cohesive and democratic nation.

Its mandate was to:

- preserve, develop, protect and promote the cultural, heritage and linguistic diversity and legacy of South Africa; lead nation-building and social cohesion through societal transformation;
- enhance archives and records management structures and systems, and promote access to information; and provide leadership to the art and culture sector so as to accelerate its transformation.

Chapters 9 and 15 of the NDP presents a vision for South Africa that entails improved education, and a transformed and united country. This vision is expressed in terms of Outcome 1 (quality basic education) and Outcome 14 (nation-building and social cohesion) of government's 2014-2019 MTSF.

Over the medium term, the department plans to focus on promoting and preserving heritage infrastructure, providing community library services, positioning the cultural and creative industries to contribute to economic growth, and facilitating social cohesion and nation-building.

Services rendered

Some of the services rendered by the department include the:

- **National Archives**, which makes archival material available to the public. Although actual access to archival documentation is free of charge, the public is charged for the reproduction of material for further use, either on film or paper. Publications are also sold, and the public is charged for the transfer of data by magnetic means.

- **National Film, Video and Sound Archives** which collects, preserves and provides access to audio-visual records created both by government and private bodies or individuals.
- **Bureau for Heraldry**, which registers the heraldic representations, names, special names and uniforms of individuals, associations and institutions. It also renders advice on heraldic and related matters and provides financial assistance to institutions, boards, committees or other public bodies or persons in order to promote the functional objectives of the Bureau of Heraldry.
- **National Language Service**, which provides a translating and editing service to all government departments. It also provides policy development support relating to official language development, particularly related to the Use of Official Languages Act of 2012.

Promoting and preserving heritage infrastructure

The department's infrastructure development initiatives aim to achieve redress for South Africa's historical imbalances and contribute to social transformation by establishing and maintaining world-class heritage sites to boost tourism and create job opportunities, particularly in historically disadvantaged areas.

Community library services

In addition to building and upgrading libraries, the department, in collaboration with the Department of Basic Education, the department also plans to build 70 dual library service points to support school curricula and enhance learning outcomes.

Cultural and creative industries

The Mzansi Golden Economy (MGE) Strategy aims to optimise the economic potential of the arts, culture and heritage sector by creating jobs and contributing to inclusive economic growth, artist development, social cohesion and urban renewal.

The strategy focuses on activities such as arts festivals, touring ventures, public art projects, artists in schools, and engagement in cultural and creative industries.

Facilitating nation-building and social cohesion

Through its Young Patriots and national youth service programmes, the department plans to support 300 young people per year over the medium term to become active promoters of national symbols, constitutional values and moral regeneration initiatives.

Through this support, the department aims to give expression to Outcome 14 (nation building and social cohesion) of government's 2014-2019 medium-term strategic framework.

The Deputy President continues to lead the Moral Regeneration Movement, a civil-society organisation mandated to facilitate and coordinate processes and initiatives aimed at promoting collective activism on issues of moral renewal.

The President will lead initiatives on national days, national orders and special events, and use them as platforms to promote nation-building and social cohesion.

New names of towns

The standardisation of geographical names is a process driven by the public and municipalities. It culminates in the ministerial approval or rejection of a recommendation for a name change from the SAGNC.

The SAGNC Act of 1998 does not provide for the Minister and the SAGNC to directly initiate name changes.

The names of towns that have been changed in the post-democratic dispensation and in more recent years include the following:

- **Limpopo:** Bela-Bela (Warmbaths); Lephalale (Ellisras); Modimolle (Nylstroom); Mokopane (Potgietersrus); Musina (Messina); Polokwane (Pietersburg); Senwabarana (Bochum); Mogwadi (Dendron); Morebeng (Soekmekaar); Modjadjiskloof (Duiwelskloof) and Mookgophong (Naboomspruit).
- **Mpumalanga:** eMalahleni (Witbank); eManzana (Badplaas); KwaDukuza (Stanger); Mashishing (Lydenburg); Makhazeni (Belfast); Emgwenya (Waterval Boven); eNtokozeni (Machadodorp); Mbombela; (Nelspruit); eMkhondo (Piet Retief) and Thuli Fakude (Leandra).
- **Free State:** Mamafubedu (Petrus Steyn), Hlohlolwane (Clocolan) and Intabazwe (Harrismith).

- **Eastern Cape:** James Calata (Jamestown); Maletswai (Aliwal North); Cacadu (Lady Frere); Komani (Queenstown); Khowa (Elliot); KwaBhaca (Mount Frere); MaXesibeni (Mount Ayliff); Dikeni (Alice) and Makhanda (Grahamstown).
- **KwaZulu-Natal:** eMthonjaneni (Melmoth).
- **Gauteng:** Sophiatown (Triomf).
- **Western Cape:** Bo-Kaap (Schotchkloof).

Cultural Development

National Art Bank of South Africa (NABSA)

The NABSA is a national programme of the then DAC, as part of the MGE Strategy implementation. The vision of the NABSA is to promote, foster and stimulate a vibrant market for the collection of South African contemporary visual art.

It is tasked with purchasing artworks from South African artists, particularly that of emerging artists in order to lease and sell the artworks to South African Government departments, private companies and private individuals.

Young Patriots Programme

The Young Patriots Programme was launched in 2016 to encourage young people to participate actively in building the capacity of the arts, culture and heritage sector, and gain meaningful skills through service delivery improvement and moral regeneration initiatives, and the youth social cohesion advocates programme.

National heritage

As part of efforts in recognising the work of South Africa's Living Human Treasures, the department has produced two books on women artists who have made a unique contribution to the living heritage.

The first two books are about Noria Mabasa, a world-renowned (ceramic and wood) sculptor from Tshino Village in the Vuwani area in Limpopo and Esther Mahlangu, world-famous for her large-scale paintings referencing her Ndebele heritage.

Languages

South Africa is a multilingual country. The Constitution of the Republic of South of 1996 guarantees equal status to 11 official languages to cater for its diverse people and their cultures. These are: English, isiNdebele, isiXhosa, isiZulu,

Afrikaans, Sepedi, Sesotho, Setswana, Siswati, Tshivenda and Xitsonga.

Other languages used in South Africa include the Khoi, Nama and San languages, Sign Language, Arabic, German, Greek, Gujarati, Hebrew, Hindi, French, Portuguese, Sanskrit, Tamil, Shona, Telegu and Urdu. South Africa has various structures and institutions that support the preservation and development of languages.

The United Nations declared 2019 as the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization Year of Indigenous Languages. Together with stakeholders, the department planned to host an international gathering on Promoting African Languages and African Literatures on International Translation Day, 30 September.

Arts and culture organisations

Some of the organisations which are playing an active role in upholding the mandate of the DAC include the following:

- The **National Heritage Council** engages heritage stakeholders in public and private institutions, including the various organs of civil society, mobilises debates and builds awareness about heritage.
- The **SAHRA** is the national administrative management body for the protection of South Africa's cultural heritage.
- The **National Arts Council of South Africa (NAC)** facilitates opportunities for people to practice and appreciate the arts.
- The **National Film and Video Foundation** develops and promotes the film and video industry in South Africa.
- The **Pan South African Language Board** is a constitutional institution that promotes an awareness of multilingualism as a national resource and supports previously marginalised languages.
- The **SAGNC** is an advisory body that facilitates name changes by consulting with communities to advise the Minister of Arts and Culture.
- **Arts institutions** such as the State Theatre in Pretoria, Playhouse Company in Durban, Artscape in Cape Town, Market Theatre in Johannesburg, Performing Arts Centre of the Free State in Bloemfontein and the Windybrow Theatre in Johannesburg.
- **Heritage institutions** include Die Afrikaanse Taalmuseum en monument, Paarl; Ditsong Museums of South

Africa, Pretoria; Iziko Museums, Cape Town; KwaZulu-Natal Museum, Pietermaritzburg; National Museum, Bloemfontein; National English Literary Museum, Grahamstown; Robben Island Museum, Cape Town; Voortrekker Museum, Pietermaritzburg; War Museum of the Boer Republics, Bloemfontein; William Humphreys Art Gallery, Kimberley; Luthuli Museum, Stanger; Nelson Mandela Museum, Mthatha; Freedom Park and the Engelenburg House Art Collection.

Festivals

Some of the different arts and cultural festivals in South Africa include the following:

- The **Aardklop National Arts Festival** is held annually in October in Potchefstroom, North West. Although it is inherently Afrikaans, it is universal in character.
- **Arts Alive International Festival** in Newtown in Johannesburg provides the best in homegrown and overseas entertainment in September.
- The **Cape Town International Jazz Festival** features international and African artists. It also features photographic and art exhibitions.
- The **Grahamstown National Arts Festival** at the end of July is the biggest annual celebration of the arts on the African continent and consists of drama, dance, theater, comedy, opera, music, jazz, visual art exhibitions, film, lectures, a craft fair and workshops, as well as a children's arts festival.
- The **Kirkwood Wildlife Festival** attracts visitors to see the game animal auction, agricultural exhibitions.
- The **Dance Umbrella** is a festival of contemporary choreography and dance, presenting work ranging from community-based dance troupes to international companies. The Dance Umbrella has established itself as the main "stepping stone" for many South African choreographers who now work internationally.
- The **Klein Karoo Nasionale Kunstefees**, a vibrant festival for the performing arts, is held annually in Oudtshoorn and presentations include drama, cabaret, and contemporary and classical music.
- The **Moretele Park Tribute Concert** is an annual festival which is held at Moretele Park in Mamelodi, Pretoria.
- The **Cape Town Minstrel Festival** sees the minstrels taking over the streets of Cape Town (Mother City) annually

on 2 January for a parade that dates back to the mid-19th century. More than 13 000 minstrels in over 70 troupes parade throughout the city centre in their colourful garb.

- The **Mangaung African Cultural Festival** in Bloemfontein is one of the biggest cultural tourism events in southern Africa. This 10-day festival in October showcases the cream of African and international talent.
- The **National Arts Festival**, held annually in July in Grahamstown in the Eastern Cape, is one of the largest and most diverse arts gatherings in Africa.
- **Oppikoppi Music Festival** near Northam in North West offers live performances by rock, alternative and blues bands, both local and from abroad.
- The **Splashy Fen Music Festival** near Underberg in KwaZulu-Natal offers a variety of mainstream and alternative rock and pop music.
- **Standard Bank Joy of Jazz** is Johannesburg's biggest annual jazz festival, with local and international artists performing at different venues across the city.
- **Up the Creek** is a popular music festival held in February on the banks of the Breede River near Swellendam in the Western Cape.
- The **White Mountain Folk Festival** in the Central Drakensberg mountain range offers great music in an awesome setting for three days in September. It features acoustic performances by some of South Africa's top folk musicians.
- **503 Music Festival** takes place twice a year in KwaMashu, KwaZulu-Natal. It is all about celebrating and thanking icons who were born and raised in the area, also bringing other national icons to the township.

Other festivals that attract both national and international visitors are: Innibos in Nelspruit, Mpumalanga; Taung Cultural Calabash in North West; the Awesome Africa Music Festival in Durban, KwaZulu-Natal; the Windybrow Theatre Festival in Johannesburg; Hilton Arts Festival in KwaZulu-Natal, and the One City Many Cultures in Cape Town, Western Cape.

Cultural tourism

Cultural festivals, African-cuisine projects, cultural villages, heritage routes and storytelling are areas that benefit from South Africa's booming tourism industry.

Many cultural villages have been established throughout South Africa to reflect the different cultures and traditions of the country's people.

Theatre

There are over 100 active venues across the country offering everything from indigenous drama, music, dance, cabaret and satire to classical opera and ballet. Performing arts institutions which receive annual transfers from the DAC include the South African State Theatre, The Playhouse Company, Artscape Theatre, The Market Theatre and the Performing Arts Council of the Free State.

Music

Music is one of the key cultural industries identified in the Cultural Industrial Growth Strategy Report and government has committed itself to harnessing its potential. In addition to its cultural value, music plays an important economic role in the country, generating significant copyright revenue. In this industry, the department has solid foundations on which to build.

These include the annual South African Music Week, the in-school education programme run in conjunction with the Department of Basic Education, and the Moshito Music Conference and Exhibition.

The Taking South African Music to the World Programme is aimed at improving export opportunities for South African music.

Government funds a number of musical ensembles directly and indirectly, through the NAC. South Africa is the 25th largest market for recorded music, with the industry employing more than 20 000 people. Local music accounts for a third of all the music bought by South Africans.

Township jazz and blues, especially the kwêla music of the 40s and 50s, are being redefined; the country also has a rich choral tradition, and pop and rock musicians have made their mark internationally.

Even techno-rave and house music have found their own variations in local culture. Kwaito and hip-hop are very popular, combining elements of rap, reggae and other musical styles into a distinctly South African style. Kwaai Jazz is also gaining momentum.

South African Music Awards (SAMAs)

The winners of the 24th annual SAMAs held at Sun City in North West on 2 June 2018 were:

- **Album of the Year:** Shekhinah – *Rose Gold*.
- **Best Duo or Group of the Year:** Mafikizolo – *20*.
- **Best Newcomer of the Year:** Shekhinah – *Rose Gold*.
- **Best Male Artist of the Year:** Prince Kaybee – *I am Music*.
- **Best Female Artist of the Year:** Shekhinah – *Rose Gold*.
- **Best Rock Album:** Fokofpolisiekar – *Selfmedikasie*.
- **Beste Pop Album:** Kurt Darren – *Laat Die Dansvloer Brand*.
- **Best Pop Album:** Tresor – *The Beautiful Madness*.
- **Beste Kontemporere Musiek:** Jo Black – *Skepe*.
- **Best Adult Contemporary Music:** Wouter Kellerman and Soweto Gospel Choir – *Symphonic Soweto*.
- **Best African Adult Album:** Siseko Pame – *Ilanga*.
- **Best Alternative Music Album:** Bongeziwe Mabandla – *Mangaliso*.
- **Best R&B/Soul/Reggae Album:** Afrotraction – *Relationships*.
- **Best Hip Hop Album:** Shane Eagle – *Yellow*.
- **Best Kwaito Album:** Busiswa – *Highly Flavoured*.
- **Best Dance Album:** Lady Zamar – *King Zamar*.
- **Best Traditional Faith Music Album:** Andile KaMajola – *Andile KaMajola Chapter 8 Sekwanele*.
- **Best Contemporary Faith Music Album:** Nqubeko Mbatha – *Heaven's Ways*.
- **Best Maskandi Album:** Abafana Baka Mgqumeni – *6 to 6*.
- **Best Jazz Album:** Nduduzo Makhathini – *Ikhambi*.
- **Best Classic Instrumental Album:** Charl du Plessis Trio – *Baroqueswing Vol. III*.
- **Best Live Audio Visual Recording:** Donald – *Red Mic Xperience*.
- **Best Collaboration:** Sun_EL Musician ft Samthing Soweto – *Akanamali*.
- **Best Music Video of the Year:** Rouge – *Arumtumtum*.
- **Best Produced Album:** Goldfish – *Late Night People*.
- **Best Engineered Album:** Mafikizolo – *20*.
- **Best Remix of the Year:** Mobi Dixon – *I got you*.
- **Best Afro Pop Album:** Mafikizolo – *20*.
- **Best African Indigenous Gospel:** Vuma Zion – *Samson Aphi Amandla Akho*.
- **Best African Artist:** Simphiwe Dana – *The Simphiwe Dana Symphony Experience*.
- **Best Selling Album of the Year:** Joyous Celebration – *Joyous Celebration Volume 21 Heal Our Land*.

- **SAMPRA Highest Airplay Award:** un-EL Musician ft Samthing Soweto – *Akanamali*.
- **Record of the Year:** Distruction Boyz ft Benny Maverick & Dladla Mshunqisi – *Omunye*.
- **SAMPRA Highest Airplay Song of the Year:** Sun-EL Musician ft Samthing Soweto – *Akanamali*.
- **SAMPRA Highest Airplay Composer's Award:** Sun-EL Musician ft Samthing Soweto – *Akanamali*.
- **CAPASSO Best Selling Digital Download Composer's Award:** Timothy Bамbelela Myeni – *Joyous Celebration Volume 21*.

The winners of the 25th annual SAMAs held on 31 May and 1 June 2019 at Sun City in North West were:

- **Best Traditional Album:** Candy – *Hupenyu Unenge Viri*.
- **Best Traditional Faith Music Album:** Spirit of Praise – *Spirit of Praise Vol 7*.
- **Beste Kontemporere Musiek Album:** Coenie de Villiers – *Pure Coenie*.
- **Beste Pop Album:** Snotkop: Sous.
- **Capasso Best Selling Digital Download Composers Award:** Joyous Celebration 22 – *All for you: Lindelani Mkhize, Mngqobi Nxumalo, Sipiwe Ngcobo, Thobeka Mahlangu*.
- **Collaboration of the Year:** Black Coffee feat. David Guetta and Delilah Montagu – *Drive*.
- **Duo/Group of the Year:** Black Motion – *Moya Wa Taola*.
- **Female Artist of the Year:** Sho Madjozi.
- **Lifetime Achievement Award:** HHP, TKZEE and Mango Groove.
- **Male Artist of the Year:** Black Coffee – *Music is King*.
- **Music Video of the Year:** Jeremy Loops – *Gold by Robert Smith*.
- **Newcomer of the Year:** Sho Madjozi – *Limpopo Champions League*.
- **Record of the Year:** Holly Rey – *Deeper*.
- **Remix of the Year:** Zakwe – *Sebentin* by Cassper Nyovest, HHP, Blaklez, Kwesta and Musiholiq.
- **Rest of Africa Artist:** Diamond Platnumz – *A Boy from Tandale*.
- **SAMPRA Highest Airplay Song of the Year:** Lady Zamar – *Collide*.
- **SAMRO Composers Highest Airplay Award:** Lady Zamar – *Collide*.
- **Album of the Year:** Sjava – *Umqhele*.
- **Best Adult Contemporary Album:** Ard Matthews – *Impossible Machines*.

- **Best African Adult Contemporary Album:** Nathi – *Iphupha Labantu*.
- **Best African Indigenous Faith Album:** Ithimba Le Africa – *Sesiphunyukile*.
- **Best Afro Pop Album:** Sjava – *Umqhele*.
- **Best Alternative Album:** Nakhane – *You Will Not Die*.
- **Best Contemporary Faith Music Album:** We Will Worship – *Seasons Volume 1*.
- **Best Dance Album:** Black Motion – *Moya Wa Taola*.
- **Best Engineered Album:** Vusi Nova – *Manyan-nyan by Robin Walsh*.
- **Best Hip Hop Album:** Nasty C – *Strings N Bling*.
- **Best Jazz Album:** Bokani Dyer Trio – *Neo Native*.
- **Best Kwaito/Gqom/Amapiano:** Spikiri – *King Don Father*.
- **Best Live Audio Visual Recording:** Cassper Nyovest – *Fill up Orlando Stadium* – Robin Kohl.
- **Best Maskandi Album:** Sgwebo Sentambo – *Yekani Umona*.
- **Best Pop Album:** Tresor – *Nostalgia*.
- **Best Produced Album:** Nasty C – *Strings and Bling*.
- **Best RnB/Soul Album:** Zonke – *L.O.V.E.*
- **Best Reggae Album:** Black Dillinger – *Mavara is King*.
- **Best Rock Album:** Dan Patlansky – *Perfection Kills*.
- **Best Selling Artist:** Joyous Celebration 22.
- **Best Selling DVD:** Joyous Celebration 22.

Orchestras

The National Arts Council is responsible for funding the KwaZulu-Natal, Cape and Gauteng orchestras as well as the Cape Town Jazz Orchestra.

Dance

Dancing is part of the African way of life and has become a prime means of artistic expression, with dance companies expanding and exploring new territory.

Contemporary work ranges from normal preconceptions of movement and performance art or performance theatre to the completely unconventional.

Added to this is the African experience, which includes traditional dance inspired by wedding ceremonies, battles, rituals and the trifles of everyday life.

An informal but highly versatile performance venue in Johannesburg, The Dance Factory, provides a permanent platform for a variety of dance and movement groups.

The University of the Witwatersrand (Wits) Theatre is another popular dance venue.

Visual arts

South Africa has a rich variety of visual art, with influences ranging from pre-historic, ancient and indigenous art to western, Asian and contemporary art.

Art galleries, ranging from small privately owned commercial galleries, to major regional galleries such as the South African National Gallery in Cape Town, the Durban Art Gallery in KwaZulu-Natal, the Johannesburg Art Gallery in Gauteng and King George VI Gallery in Port Elizabeth in the Eastern Cape, showcase collections of indigenous, historical and contemporary works.

Rock art

There are many traces of ancient cultures that existed in southern Africa in the distant past. Experts estimate that there are 250 000 rock-art sites south of the Zambezi.

The San people left a priceless and unique collection of Stone Age paintings and engravings in the region, which also represents the largest collection of its kind in the world.

Photography

With its scenic beauty, abundant wildlife, diversity of cultures and rich historical heritage, South Africa is a photographer's paradise.

Many South African photographers have been acclaimed for their work, which features in coffee-table books, documentaries, local and overseas exhibitions, magazines and newspapers.

Architecture

South Africa has a rich architectural heritage, reflecting contributions from all the cultural groups in the country. Through the centuries, a unique trend has developed in South Africa's architectural style, which has been referred to as an innovative marriage of traditions.

This is evident in the variety of architectural structures found all over the country, ranging from humble dwellings, historical homesteads and public buildings, to modern, commercial buildings reflecting state-of-the-art technology and designs that match the best in the world.

Crafts

South African beadwork, once the insignia of tribal royalty alone, has found a huge range of applications, from the creation of coverings for everything from bottles to matchboxes.

With workplaces ranging from the pavements and markets of the big cities to dwellings in deep rural areas, South Africans produce a remarkable range of arts and crafts, including various forms of traditional artwork and innovative new products.

These range from jewellery, tableware, home decorations, embroidery and key rings to skilfully crafted wooden engravings and wirework sculptures. In addition to the standard materials such as beads, grass, leather, fabric and clay, many other mediums are also used, including telephone wire, plastic bags, empty cans, bottle tops and even food tin labels, to create brightly coloured paper mâché bowls.

Shops, markets and collectors dealing in African crafts provide much-needed employment and income to communities.

Literature

South Africa has a rich and diverse literary history, and the local literature sector has become globally competitive and the country's writers continue to command respect throughout the world.

South Africa commemorates the annual National Book Week (NBW) in September. It is an initiative of the South African Book Development Council, in collaboration with the DSAC.

Reading statistics report that only 14% of the South African population are active book readers, and a mere 5% of parents read to their children.

NBW is an important initiative in encouraging the nation to value reading as a fun and pleasurable activity and to showcase how reading can easily be incorporated into one's daily lifestyle. In 2019, the commemoration coincided with International Literacy Day on 8 September. The NBW was celebrated from 2 to 8 September.

South African Literary Awards (SALA) 2018

The 13th SALA ceremony was held in Pretoria on 6 November 2018. The winners were:

- **First-time Published Author Award:** Malebo Sephodi (*Miss Behave*).

- **Creative Non-Fiction Award:** Jurgen Schadeburg (*The Way I See It*).
- **Poetry Award:** Kelwyn Sole (*Walking, Falling*).
- **Chairperson's Award:** Peter Magubane, for his body of work.
- **Lifetime Achievement Literary Award:** Ronnie Kasrils and Hermann Giliomee, for their body of work.
- **Posthumous Literary Award:** Leon Roussow and SM Mofokeng, for their body of work.
- **Nadine Gordimer Short Story Award:** Nick Mulgrew (*The First Law of Sadness*) and Nicole Jaekel Strauss (*As In Die Mond*).
- **Literary Journalism Award:** Sam Mathe, for his body of work.
- **National Poet Laureate Prize:** Mongane Wally Serote, for his body of work.
- **Children's Literature Award:** Jaco Jacobs (*Daar's Nie 'N Krokodil In Hierdie Boek Nie/Moenie Hierdie Boek Eet Nie*).
- **Literary Translators Award:** Peter Tshobisa Mtuze and Jeff Opland (*Umoya Wembongi: Collected Poems 1922 – 1935*) by John Solilo and Iziganeko Zesizwe: *Occasional Poems (1900-1943)* by S.E.K. Mqhayi.)

Film

The South African Government recognises the significant role played by the film sector in nation-building, promoting social cohesion, reconciliation and supporting economic growth and job creation.

Government offers a package of incentives to promote its film production industry. The Foreign Film and Television Production incentive aims to attract foreign-based film productions to shoot on location in South Africa, and the South African Film and Television Production and Co-production incentive aims to assist local film producers in producing local content.

The South African Emerging Black Filmmakers incentive, a subprogramme of the South African Film and Television Production and Co-production Incentive, which aims to assist local emerging black filmmakers to nurture and grow them to take up big productions and thus contribute towards employment creation.

The three largest film distributors in South Africa are Ster-Kinekor, United International Pictures and Nu-Metro. Ster-Kinekor has a specialised art circuit, called Cinema

Nouveau, with theatres in Johannesburg, Cape Town, Durban and Pretoria.

Film festivals include the Durban International Film Festival; the North West Film Festival; the Apollo Film Festival in Victoria West; the Three Continents Film Festival (specialising in African, South American and Asian films); the Soweto Film Festival; and the Encounters Documentary Festival, which alternates between Cape Town and Johannesburg.

Museums

South Africa has more than 300 museums ranging from museums of geology, history, the biological sciences and the arts, to mining, agriculture, forestry and many other disciplines.

The Nelson Mandela Museum in Soweto, Johannesburg had signed a partnership with Google to launch the Google Expedition that would provide a virtual tour of the museum.

In December 2018, Cabinet approved the Policy Framework on National Museums, which aims to transform the management and operations of museums in terms of access, redress, equity, nation-building and social cohesion.

The policy proposes the clustering of museums into new management structures to achieve economies of scale by reducing the number of councils. It also provides for the grading of all the museums according to qualities, scope and significance to enable equitable funding allocations.

National Library of South Africa (NLSA)

The NLSA is the custodian and provider of the nation's key knowledge resources. Its collections contain a wealth of information sources, including rare manuscripts, books, periodicals, government publications, foreign official publications, maps, technical reports, and special interest material, including Africana and newspapers.

South African Library for the Blind (SALB)

The SALB is a statutory organisation located in Grahamstown in the Eastern Cape. Its purpose is to provide, free of charge as far as is reasonably possible, a national library and information service to serve blind and print-handicapped readers in South Africa.

It is partly state-funded and depends for the remainder of its financial needs on funds from the private sector and the general public.

The SALB also produces documents in special media such as Braille, audio and tactile formats. It develops standards for the production of such documents and researches production methods and technology in the appropriate fields.

To make library services more accessible, the SALB partners with 115 public libraries providing accessible reading material and assistive devices.

In 2019, the SALB celebrated its centenary and in March 2019 produced a book called *South African Library for the Blind – a Diary of the Library*, which provides a historical account of the 100-year history.

Blind SA

Blind SA, located in Johannesburg, provides services for blind and partially sighted individuals to uplift and empower them by publishing books, magazines and other documents in Braille.

It equips blind people with the skills they need to fully and independently participate in society. This includes support in living without assistance, getting about, using technology, reading, working and socialising.





OFFICIAL GUIDE TO
South Africa
2018/19

Tourism

Tourism has an important role to play in placing the South African economy on a sustainable inclusive growth trajectory.

Described as the New Gold, it is a sector that is thriving, and that has tremendous potential for further growth and for the creation of much-needed jobs.

The mandate of the Department of Tourism (DoT), as outlined in the Tourism Act of 2014, is to:

- promote growth and development of the tourism sector; promote quality tourism products and services;
- provide for the effective domestic and international marketing of South Africa as a tourist destination; enhance cooperation and coordination between all spheres of government in developing and managing tourism; and
- promote the practice of responsible tourism for the benefit of South Africa and for the enjoyment of all its residents and foreign visitors.

In recognition of tourism as a national priority, with a potential to contribute significantly to economic development, the *1996 White Paper on the Development and Promotion of Tourism in South Africa* provides for the promotion of domestic and international tourism.

The National Development Plan recognises tourism as one of the main drivers of employment and economic growth, and envisages the promotion of South Africa as a major tourist and business events destination.

Outcome 4 (decent employment through inclusive growth) and outcome 7 (comprehensive rural development and land reform) of government's 2014-2019 Medium Term Strategic Framework make reference to specific targets towards the realisation of this vision.

Tourism growth

The growth of the tourism sector has been a boon for South Africa's economy. According to the World Travel and Tourism Council, the 2018 contribution of the tourism sector in South Africa, directly accounted for 2.8% of real gross domestic product (GDP), which amounts to R139 billion and this was projected to grow to R145,3 billion for 2019.

The indirect contribution of the tourism sector to the economy's GDP in 2018 stood at an even higher 8.2%, which captures the strong economic links to the demand and supply side that the sector has with other sectors of the South African economy.

In addition, the tourism sector direct employment accounted for 4.2% of total employment in the South African economy in 2018 and this was projected to increase to 709 thousands jobs in 2019, while tourism's indirect contribution to total employment stood at 9.2% for 2018.

In 2018, South Africa recorded a total arrivals figure of 7.8 million from within the African continent, which represents the largest percentage of international arrivals to South Africa.

In his State of the Nation Address in June 2019, President Cyril Ramaphosa outlined an ambitious target of more than doubling South Africa's international arrivals to 21 million by 2030. To achieve this international arrival target, the growth rate of international arrivals needs to increase to over 4% in the short run and be consistently be maintained in excess of 6% until 2030.

Travel Indaba

Africa's Travel Indaba took place at the Inkosi Albert Luthuli International Convention Centre in KwaZulu-Natal from 8 to 10 May 2018 and from 2 to 4 May 2019 respectively.

Both events shared the theme: "Africa's Stories, Your Success". The annual event showcases the widest variety of Southern Africa's best tourism products and services, and afford delegates an opportunity to acquaint themselves with the exciting travel experiences on offer, with a view of forging dynamic tourism partnerships.

Indaba is one of the largest tourism marketing events on the African calendar and one of the top three 'must visit' events of its kind on the global calendar. It has won the accolades as Africa's best travel and tourism show awarded by the Association of World Travel Awards.

Entity South African Tourism (SAT)

SAT markets South Africa internationally and domestically as a preferred tourism and business events destination, ensures that tourist facilities and services are of the highest standard, and monitors and evaluates the performance of the tourism sector.

The Tourism Grading Council of South Africa operates as a business unit of SAT, and is the only recognised and globally credible quality assurance body for tourism products in South Africa.

Tourism in the provinces

Western Cape

The Western Cape is South Africa's most developed tourism region. The tourism industry in the province has grown faster and created more jobs than any other industry.

Key attractions

- Table Mountain, which forms part of the Table Mountain National Park, is one of the official New Seven Wonders of Nature, following a lengthy international public voting process. A modern cableway takes visitors to the top of the mountain, providing spectacular views.
- The Victoria and Alfred (V&A) Waterfront, the Company's Gardens, the District Six Museum, the houses of Parliament and the South African National Gallery.
- The Nelson Mandela Gateway to Robben Island is in the Clock Tower Precinct at the V&A Waterfront. It houses interactive multimedia exhibitions, an auditorium, boardrooms, the Robben Island Museum and a restaurant.
- The Gold of Africa Museum, established by Anglo Gold, houses a celebrated collection of more than 350 gold artefacts.
- The South African Rugby Museum in Newlands reflects the history of the sport as far back as 1891.
- All South African wine routes fall under the auspices of the Wine of Origin Scheme. Production is divided into official regions, districts and wards. There are five principle demarcations – Coastal, Breede River Valley, Little Karoo, Olifants River and Boberg, covering 21 districts and 61 wards.
- Jazz is big in Cape Town. From traditional blues through progressive jazz to African-influenced jazz, every taste is catered for at a number of restaurants, jazz cafés, cigar bars, pubs and wine farms. The top jazz event in the Western Cape is the annual Cape Town International Jazz Festival.

Garden Route

The Garden Route features the pont at Malgas, which is one of the two remaining ponts in the country, ferrying vehicles and livestock across the Breede River. This popular route spans roughly 200 km of South Africa's southern coast, incorporating a picturesque stretch of coastline.

Key attractions

- Attequas Kloof Pass, South African/Anglo-Boer War blockhouses and the Bartolomeu Dias complex.
- Great Brak River offers a historic village with many opportunities for whale- and dolphin-watching along the extensive coast.
- The Slave Tree in George, located just outside the Old Library, was planted in 1811. It is known to be the biggest English oak in the Southern Hemisphere.
- Nearby, bungee-jumping at the Gouritz River Gorge, hiking, mountain-biking and angling are popular pastimes.
- The Point in Mossel Bay is popular among surfers and its natural pool formed by rock is also a favourite swimming spot at low tide.
- Genadendal is the oldest Moravian village in Africa, with church buildings and a school dating back to 1738. The Genadendal Mission and Museum complex documents the first mission station in South Africa.
- Villiersdorp houses the Dagbreek Museum that dates back to 1845. The historical home, Oude Radyn, is possibly the only building in the Western Cape to have Batavian wooden gutters and down pipes.

Little Karoo

The Little Karoo's fascinating landscape is fashioned almost entirely by water. Its vegetation ranges from lush greenery in the fertile river valleys to short, rugged Karoo plants in the veld. Gorges feature rivers that cut through towering mountains, while breathtakingly steep passes cross imposing terrain. The region is also home to the world's largest bird – the ostrich.

Key attractions

- Excellent wines and port are produced in the Calitzdorp and De Rust areas.
- The Swartberg Nature Reserve and Pass with their gravel roads are also worth a visit.
- The Little Karoo Nasionale Kunstefees (National Arts Festival) is held in Oudtshoorn annually.
- The Congo Caves, a series of 30 subterranean limestone caves, bear evidence of early San habitation and features magnificent dripstone formations.
- Amalienstein and Zoar are historic mission stations

midway between Ladismith and Calitzdorp. Visitors can go on donkey-cart and hiking trails through orchards and vineyards. The Seweweekspoort is ideal for mountain-biking, hiking, and protea and fynbos admirers.

Northern Cape

The Big Hole in Kimberley is the largest hand-dug excavation in the world. In 1871, diamonds were discovered at the site and mined manually by prospectors.

Key attractions

- The house where Sol Plaatje (African National Congress founding member and human-rights activist) lived in Kimberley, has a library of Plaatje's and other black South African writers' works, and several displays, including a portrayal of black involvement in the South African/Anglo-Boer War.
- Known as the "Oasis of the Kalahari", Kuruman is blessed with a permanent and abundant source of water that flows from Gasegonyana (Setswana for "the little water calabash") – commonly called the "Eye of Kuruman" – which yields 20 million litres of water a day.
- The Wonderwerk Cave at Kuruman features extensive San paintings that may be viewed by appointment.
- The Kalahari Raptor Centre cares for injured birds. Many of these majestic creatures can be seen at close quarters.
- Uptington is the commercial, educational and social centre of the Green Kalahari, owing its prosperity to agriculture and its irrigated lands along the Orange River. A camel-and-rider statue in front of the town's police station pays tribute to the "mounties", who patrolled the harsh desert territory on camels.
- Namaqualand is famous for a spectacular annual show in spring when an abundance of wild flowers covers vast tracts of desert.
- Namaqualand is also home to the Ais-Ais/Richtersveld National Park. It is managed jointly by the local Nama people and South African National Parks.
- De Aar is the most important railway junction in South Africa. The author Olive Schreiner lived in the town for many years. Visitors can dine in her former house, which has been converted into a restaurant.
- Hanover is known for its handmade shoes and articles made mostly from sheepskin and leather.

Free State

This central region of South Africa is characterised by endless rolling fields of wheat, sunflowers and maize, and forms the principal bread basket of South Africa.

Key attractions

- With its King's Park Rose Garden containing more than 4 000 rose bushes, the Free State's major city, Bloemfontein, has rightfully earned the nickname "City of Roses." The city also hosts an annual rose festival.
- Bloemfontein has a busy cultural and social-events calendar. One of the annual events is the Mangaung African Cultural Festival, popularly known as the Macufe Arts Festival, in September.
- The National Women's Memorial commemorates the women and children who died in concentration camps during the Anglo-Boer/South African War.
- The Gariep Dam, more than 100 km-long and 15 km-wide, is part of the Orange River Water Scheme, the largest inland expanse of water in South Africa.
- Between the dam and Bethulie is the Gariep Dam Nature Reserve.
- Clocolan is known for the beauty of its cherry trees when they are in full bloom in spring. San rock paintings and engravings are also found in the area.
- The Llandaff Oratory in the nearby village of Van Reenen is believed to be the smallest Roman Catholic church in the world.
- At Harrismith, there are various memorials in honour of those who fought in the Anglo-Boer/South African War and World War I. Of particular interest is a memorial for the Scots Guards and Grenadier Guards.
- The Golden Gate Highlands National Park outside Clarens has beautiful sandstone rock formations.
- The Vredefort Dome, a World Heritage Site, is the oldest and largest meteorite impact site in the world. It was formed about two billion years ago when a giant meteorite hit Earth.

Eastern Cape

The main feature of the Eastern Cape is its magnificent coastline. Added to the diverse coastal experiences are more than 60 state-owned game reserves and over 30 private

game farms, which collectively cover an area greater than the Kruger National Park.

Key attractions

- Port Elizabeth has some beautiful parks with well-landscaped gardens, including St George's Park, which covers 73 ha and houses the famous Port Elizabeth Cricket Club, the oldest bowling green in South Africa; Prince Alfred's Guard Memorial; the 1882 Victorian Pearson Conservatory; and the 54-ha Settlers' Park.
- To the north-west of Graaff-Reinet lies the Valley of Desolation. The valley is a national monument within the Karoo Nature Reserve, formed millions of years ago by weathering erosion.
- Varied game reserves, including the Addo Elephant, Mountain Zebra and Mkambati parks.
- South Africa's first marine park, the Tsitsikamma National Park extends along a rocky coastline of 50 km, and 3 km out to sea.
- Southern right and humpback whales and their calves are regularly spotted from the high dunes, usually between May and November, while common and bottlenose dolphins are often seen close to shore.
- The Camdeboo National Park, near Graaff-Reinet, was proclaimed as South Africa's 22nd National Park.

Limpopo

The Limpopo landscape is made up of dramatic contrasts characterised by hot savanna plains and mist-clad mountains, age-old indigenous forests and cycads alongside modern plantations, and ancient mountain fortresses and the luxury of contemporary infrastructure and modern-day facilities.

Key attractions

- The Marakele National Park is home to some rare yellowwood and cedar trees and the world's largest colony of Cape vultures. It is also a leader in the conservation of the black rhino outside of the Kruger National Park and the KwaZulu-Natal parks.
- Polokwane is considered the premier game-hunting destination in South Africa.
- The Mapungubwe Archaeological Site, 80 km west of Musina, lies within the boundaries of the Mapungubwe

National Park. It is one of the richest of its kind in Africa and a world heritage site. Excavations in the 1930s uncovered a royal graveyard, which included a number of golden artefacts, including the famous gold-foil rhinoceros.

- The Kruger National Park (northern section) is one of South Africa's major tourist attractions. The park is home to a large number and wide variety of amphibians, reptiles and birds, as well as 147 mammal species, including the Big Five.

North West

North West has several cultural villages that entertain and attract visitors.

A number of excellent game reserves have been established, including the Pilanesberg National Park.

Key attractions

- The historic route of Mahikeng includes an South African/Anglo-Boer War siege site, the Molema House where Sol Plaatje lived while writing his Mafikeng Diary, and the Mahikeng Museum.
- The Groot Marico region is known as mampoeer country and visitors can explore the Mampoeer Route. The Kortkloof Cultural Village is dedicated to the Tswana people.
- Ottosdal is the only place in South Africa where the unique "wonderstone", or pyrophyllite, is found and mined.
- The Ottosdal Night Race is organised in conjunction with the Diamond Marathon Club. The event consists of 42,2-km, 21,1-km, 10-km races and a 5-km fun run.
- San rock engravings, Stone Age implements and structures are found on farms such as Witpoort, Gestoptefontein, Driekuul and Korannafontein.

Mpumalanga

Mpumalanga means "the place where the sun rises" in the Nguni languages. The climate and topography vary from cool highland grasslands at 1 600 m above sea level, through the middleveld and escarpment, to the subtropical Lowveld towards the Kruger National Park and many private game reserves.

Scenic beauty, climate and wildlife, voted the most attractive features of South Africa, are found in abundance in this province.

Key attractions

- Barberton features many reminders of the early gold-rush era. Museums include Belhaven, Fernlea House and Stopforth House. The only known verdite deposits in the world are found in the rocks of the Barberton district. The annual Diggers Festival is held in September every year.
- The spectacular Blyde River Canyon is a 26-km-long gorge carved out of the face of the escarpment, and is one of the natural wonders of Africa. God's Window provides a magnificent panoramic view across miles of densely forested mountains, the green Lowveld and the canyon.
- Sabie is the centre of the largest man-made forest in South Africa and a popular destination among mountain bikers. The Cultural Historical Forestry Museum depicts various aspects of the country's forestry industry.
- The Bridal Veil, Horseshoe and Lone Creek waterfalls, and Mac Mac pools and falls just outside Sabie are well worth a visit.
- The 69-km Prospector's Trail starts at the Mac Mac Forest Station and leads to the Bourke's Luck potholes.
- At the Montrose Falls in Schoemanskloof, the Crocodile River cascades 12 m into a series of rock pools. It is also the starting point of the annual Lowveld Crocodile Canoe Marathon, held in February every year.
- The region also holds rich historical sentiments centred on the monument of the late Mozambican President Samora Machel, constructed in the village of Mbuzini.

Gauteng

'Gauteng' is a Sesotho word meaning "place of gold". It is the smallest province of South Africa and also the most populous and urbanized. It is characterised by a cosmopolitan mix of people from all walks of life.

Key attractions

- Natural areas include the Suikerbosrand Nature Reserve (Heidelberg); Braamfontein Spruit Trust, The Wilds on Houghton and the Klipriviersberg Nature Reserve in Johannesburg; the Kloofendal Nature Reserve and Walter Sisulu Botanical Gardens (in Roodepoort); and the National Botanical Garden, Smuts House Museum, and Freedom Park in Pretoria; as well as the Tswaing Crater Trail.

- A team of Lippizaner stallions performs every Sunday at the South African National Horsemanship Centre in Kyalami.
- The Sterkfontein caves near Krugersdorp are the site of the discovery of the skull of the famous Mrs Ples, an estimated 2,5-million-year-old hominid fossil; and Little Foot, an almost complete hominid skeleton of more than 3,3 million years old.
- The Constitution Hill Precinct is set to become one of South Africa's most popular landmarks.
- A guided tour of Soweto leaves a lasting impression of this vast community's life and struggle against apartheid.
- The Apartheid Museum in Johannesburg tells the story of the legacy of apartheid through photographs, film and artefacts.
- The Nelson Mandela Centre of Memory opened its doors to the public following the death of former President Nelson Mandela, in December 2013.
- The Union Buildings celebrated its centenary in 2013. Designed by Sir Herbert Baker, construction started in 1910 and was completed in 1913. It has since been the setting for presidential inaugurations. It is also the setting of many national celebrations, including Women's Day and Freedom Day. In December 2013, a bronze statue of former President Mandela was unveiled at the Union Buildings.
- The National Zoological Gardens in Pretoria is considered one of the 10 best in the world.
- The old mining town of Cullinan is where the world's biggest diamond, the 3 106-carat Cullinan diamond, was found.

KwaZulu-Natal

One of the country's most popular tourist destinations, the province stretches from Port Edward in the south to the borders of Eswatini and Mozambique to the north.

Key attractions

- The Durban area has a significant number of reserves, developed parks and specialised gardens, the most renowned being the Municipal Botanical Garden. Besides the botanical gardens, Mitchell Park is one of the most popular green spaces, which includes an outdoor restaurant, a zoo and a playground for children.
- Annual events in and around the city include the popular Comrades Marathon between Durban and

Pietermaritzburg, an international surfing competition, the Duzi canoe marathon, the Midmar Mile, Dolphin Mile open water swimming events, the Durban July horse-race, the Amashova-shova cycle tour, and the Spar Mercury Ladies 10 km Challenge.

- The Weza State Forest in East Griqualand runs through indigenous forests and commercial plantations. The forest is home to several antelope species and a huge variety of birds.
- St Lucia and its surroundings comprises the iSimangaliso Wetland Park that have five separate ecosystems. It is a fishing and bird watching paradise. Boat trips on the lake offer opportunities for crocodile and hippo sightings. The Kosi Bay Nature Reserve is part of the Coastal Forest Reserve between Mozambique and Sodwana Bay.
- The Hluhluwe-Umfolozi Park, one of the largest game parks in South Africa, is home to the Big Five, as well as cheetah and wild dogs.
- The Battlefields Route in northern KwaZulu-Natal has the highest concentration of battlefields and related military sites in South Africa.
- The Midlands Meander is a scenic drive between Hilton and Mooi River, with some 430 art studios, potters and painters, to herb gardens and cheese makers.
- Midmar Dam is zoned for yachting and power-boating. The 1 000-ha Midmar Game Park has rhino, zebra, a wide variety of antelope species and waterfowl.

Top-10 reasons to visit South Africa

- 1. Affordable** – In South Africa, you can even afford luxury and have spending money for shopping and other treats.
- 2. Natural beauty** – South Africa's scenic wonders are legendary. From Table Mountain to God's Window, the mountains, forests, coasts and deserts will sooth your soul and delight you.
- 3. World-class facilities** – You will find it easy to get around, find a comfortable place to stay and have a great meal.
- 4. Adventure** – South Africa is the adventure capital of the world. With over 130 adventures, there is something for everyone from mountain walks to shark-cage diving.
- 5. Good weather** – In sunny South Africa with a great weather, you can enjoy the outdoors, play golf year-round and take advantage of the nearly 3 000 km coastline.

6. Rainbow Nation – The Rainbow Nation celebrates all its African and immigrant cultures. South Africans are known for their friendliness and hospitality.

7. Diverse experiences – Go almost anywhere in South Africa and experience the ultimate combination of nature, wildlife, culture, adventure, heritage and good vibe.

8. Wildlife – The abundant and diverse wildlife include the Big Five (African lion, African elephant, Cape buffalo, African leopard and black rhinoceros).

9. Freedom Struggle – Discover a nation's struggle for freedom whilst following the footsteps of Nelson Mandela, Hector Pieterse and many other celebrated revolutionaries.

10. Responsible tourism – In South Africa you can travel with care as you explore protected areas, contribute to social and conservation projects, and collect arts and crafts.

Traveller's Guide

1. Arriving in South Africa – All travellers arriving in South Africa at land, sea or air ports of entry are required to pass through immigration control, a service offered by the South African Department of Home Affairs, on arrival and before collecting their baggage. Thereafter they have to pass through customs control which falls under the auspices of the South African Revenue Service (SARS).

Travellers with goods to declare must complete a Traveller Card and make a verbal declaration of their goods to a Customs Officer, who will then generate a Traveller Declaration.

Baggage may be X-rayed or examined by Customs officers to detect dutiable, restricted or prohibited goods and you may be questioned. Should travellers be found to be carrying undeclared, restricted or prohibited goods they could be fined or face prosecution.

2. Prohibited and restricted goods (A full list of Prohibited and Restricted goods is available on the SARS website: www.sars.gov.za) – It is illegal to bring in the following prohibited goods to South Africa:

- Narcotics: All narcotic and psychotropic substances, as well as habit-forming drugs such as cannabis, heroin, cocaine, Mandrax, Ecstasy and any paraphernalia relating to their use;
- Firearms, weapons and ammunition: Fully automatic, military and unnumbered weapons, explosives and fireworks and weapons of mass destruction;

- Poison and other toxic substances;
- Cigarettes with a mass of more than 2kg per 1 000;
- Goods to which a trade description or trademark is applied in contravention of any Act (for example, counterfeit goods);
- Unlawful reproductions of any works subject to copyright; and
- Prison-made and penitentiary-made goods.

3. Goods you have to declare – Certain goods may only be imported if you are in possession of the necessary authority/ permit and these have to be declared on arrival. These include:

- Currency: South African bank notes in excess of R25 000, gold coins, coin and stamp collections and unprocessed gold.
- Endangered plants and animals: Species of plants or animals that are listed as endangered, whether they are alive or dead. The restriction includes any parts of and articles made from them. The restriction includes any parts of and articles made from them;
- Food, plants, animals and biological goods: All plants and plant products, such as seeds, flowers, fruit, honey, margarine and vegetable oils. All animals, birds, poultry and products thereof, for example, dairy products, butter and eggs;
- Medicines: Travellers are allowed to bring in no more than three months' supply of pharmaceutical drugs and medicines for their personal use. All other pharmaceutical drugs and medicines have to be declared and have to be accompanied by a letter or certified prescription from a registered physician.

4. Duty-free allowances – The following goods may be imported into South Africa without the payment of Customs duty and Value-Added Tax (VAT):

- Consumable goods in accompanied baggage. Goods falling within the following allowances may be imported without the payment of Customs duty and VAT as accompanied baggage. Crew members, including the master of a ship and the pilot of an aircraft, are only entitled to this rebate provided such members are returning to South Africa permanently. No more than: 200 cigarettes and 20 cigars per person; 250g of cigarette or pipe tobacco per person; 50ml perfumery and 250ml eau de toilette per person; Two litres of wine per person; 1 litre in total of spiritous and other

alcoholic beverages per person.

Persons under 18 years of age may claim duty-free allowances on goods imported by them, with the exception of alcohol and tobacco products, whether or not they are accompanied by their parents or guardians and provided that it is for their personal use.

- Personal effects, sporting and recreational equipment. Visitors may bring in new or used personal effects, sporting and recreational equipment either as accompanied or unaccompanied baggage, for own use during their visit. You may be required to lodge a cash deposit to cover the potential duty/tax on expensive articles pending their re-exportation. The deposit will be refunded on departure after a Customs officer has physically inspected the items and verified that they are being re-exported. Visitors must notify the Customs office at which the deposit was lodged at least two days before departure to ensure that the refund is ready. You will find the office number on the documents which will be given to you when lodging your deposit.

If you are departing from a port other than the port where you lodged the deposit, the inspection report confirming the re-exportation of the items will be forwarded to the office where the deposit was lodged and a cheque will be posted to the address you had provided.

Residents of South Africa who had exported new or used personal effects, sporting and recreational equipment for their own use while abroad can bring these back either as accompanied or unaccompanied baggage.

Any goods such as jewellery which were exchanged, remodelled, processed or repaired while you were abroad, do not fall within this allowance and must be declared for duty assessment purposes. They include **new and used goods**.

In addition to the personal effects and consumable goods allowances, travellers are allowed new or used goods in accompanied baggage to the value of R5 000 (or R25 000 if arriving from Botswana, Lesotho, Namibia or Eswatini).

This allowance is only valid once per person during a 30-day period and does not apply to goods imported by persons returning after an absence of less than 48 hours.

Crew members (including the master or the pilot) are only entitled to a duty-free allowance on a value not exceeding R700. Consumable goods as mentioned above are excluded from this entitlement.

5. Goods on which duty has to be paid – Other than those specified above, all goods and gifts acquired abroad are subject to the payment of Customs duty and VAT when they are brought into South Africa. This includes goods purchased duty-free on board aircraft and ships or in duty-free shops.

Customs duties and taxes are payable in rands, the currency of South Africa. Goods that attract duty and do not qualify for the flat rate assessment explained below include:

- Firearms acquired abroad or at any duty-free shop imported by residents of South Africa returning after an absence of less than six months;
- Goods for commercial purposes; and
- Goods carried on behalf of other persons.

In cases where residents of South Africa who are travelling abroad have had goods such as jewellery re-modelled, processed or repaired, duty is payable on the costs incurred in these processes.

In cases where goods have been exchanged, duty is payable on the full value of the article received in exchange. These goods may qualify for the duty-free allowance of R5 000 and the flat-rate assessment. Returning residents must ensure that the goods in question are clearly described and that they can provide documentary proof of these transaction(s) and the costs involved.

Travellers have the option to pay Customs duty at a flat rate of 20% on goods acquired abroad or in any duty-free shop to expedite their passage through Customs. The total value of these additional goods, new or used, may not exceed R20 000 per person. Flat-rated goods are also exempted from payment of VAT.

This option can only be chosen if the total value of goods imported does not exceed R25 000 in value. This excludes consumable goods in excess of the quantities specified under duty-free allowances.

If the value of the additional goods exceeds R20 000 or if you decide not to use the flat rate option, the appropriate rates of duty and VAT will have to be assessed and paid on each individual item. In addition, 15% VAT will be payable on the assessed goods.

This flat-rate assessment will be allowed unlimited times per person during a period of 30 days and shall not apply to goods imported by persons returning after an absence of less than 48 hours.

The flat-rate assessment may be used by those under 18 years of age, provided the goods are for their own use. In the case of crew members, including the master of a ship or the pilot of an aircraft, the value of the items that may be assessed on a flat-rate basis is restricted to R2 000 per person.

6. Travellers in transit – Travellers in transit to countries outside the Southern African Customs Union (SACU), Botswana, Lesotho, Namibia, South Africa and Eswatini, who have been booked from an airport outside the common customs area, will not be required to comply with Customs formalities in South Africa.

Travellers arriving in South Africa and taking a connecting flight to another SACU member country will be required to complete all Customs formalities upon arrival. Baggage belonging to passengers in transit will automatically be transferred from the international flight at the airport of transit in South Africa.

These passengers may not leave the transit area of the airport between flights. Should you travel to your final destination by road, Customs formalities must be complied with at the port of arrival in South Africa.

7. Refund of tax on visitors' purchases – VAT at a rate of 15% is levied on the purchase of most goods in South Africa. Tourists and foreign visitors to South Africa may apply for a refund of the VAT paid at departure points.

The tax invoices for the purchases and the goods must be presented for inspection to the VAT Refund Administrator. No refund will be made if the claim is not lodged before departure.







OFFICIAL GUIDE TO
South Africa
2018/19
Transport

The Department of Transport (DoT) is responsible for the legislation and policies for rail, pipelines, roads, airports, harbours, and the intermodal operations of public transport and freight.

It is responsible for conducting sector research, formulating legislation and policy to set the strategic direction of subsectors, assigning responsibilities to public entities, regulating through setting norms and standards, and monitoring implementation.

Chapter 4 of the National Development Plan (NDP) calls for the development of economic infrastructure as the foundation of social and economic development. This call is given action by Outcome 6 (an efficient, competitive and responsive economic infrastructure network) of government's 2014-2019 Medium Term Strategic Framework, which is directly aligned with the work of the DoT.

The 12 public entities under the Ministry of Transport are the **Airports Company South Africa (ACSA)**; **Passenger Rail Agency of South Africa (PRASA)**; **South African National Roads Agency Ltd (SANRAL)**; **Ports Regulator of South Africa**; **Air Traffic and Navigation Services (ATNS)**; **Cross-Border Road Transport Agency (CBRTA)**; **Railway Safety Regulator**; **Road Accident Fund (RAF)**; **Road Traffic Infringement Agency (RTIA)**; **Road Traffic Management Corporation (RTMC)**; **South African Civil Aviation Authority (SACAA)** and **South African Maritime Safety Authority (SAMSA)**. Commercial role players include Transnet, South African Airways (SAA) and South African Express (SAX).

Maintaining provincial and national road networks

Roads are a crucial component of South Africa's transport system and economy. According to the Land Transport Survey, which was released by Statistics South Africa in 2018, 77.3% of freight categorised as land freight in South Africa is hauled on its roads, accounting for 73.8% of total land freight income.

This dependence on road infrastructure implies that the condition of roads has direct bearing on the ease of movement of goods and people across South Africa, which impacts overall economic growth.

In this regard, SANRAL carries out upgrades, maintenance and strengthening programmes of the non-toll and toll

portfolios on national roads. About 49 000 kilometres of the South African paved road network remain under the control of provincial transport departments.

Transport trends

Statistics South Africa's General Household Survey of 2018 shows that in 2018, just under two-thirds (64,6%) of the learners walked to school, while a further 9,0% travelled by private car, and 6,8% used taxis.

The most commonly used mode of transport to travel to work was a private car (33,7%), followed by taxis (24,0%) and walking (20,4%). The study found that 11,9% of the working population worked from home and that they therefore had no need for transport.

Some 36,7% of South African households had at least one household member who used a minibus taxi/sedan taxi/bakkie taxi during the week preceding the survey.

Provinces with the highest levels of minibus taxi use were: Gauteng (44,1%), Eastern Cape (39,6%), and Mpumalanga (37,5%). By comparison, 6,2% of South African households used a bus during the preceding week. It is notable that 15,0% of households in Mpumalanga used the bus. The use of trains was most common in Western Cape (5,8%) and Gauteng (5,3%).

Airports Company South Africa

The ACSA was formed to own and operate the nine principal South African airports, including the three main international gateways: OR Tambo International Airport in Johannesburg, Cape Town International Airport and King Shaka International Airport in Durban.

Passenger Rail Agency of South Africa

PRASA provides rail commuter services within, to and from South Africa in the public interest. In consultation with the DoT, the agency also provides for long-haul passenger rail and bus services within, to and from South Africa.

The department continues its efforts to modernise South Africa's passenger rail services through PRASA. Over the medium term, the agency was expected to focus on executing its capital programme, intensifying its repairs and maintenance regime, and improving security on the rail network, to improve the reliability of services and increase passenger ridership.

Capital transfers to the agency over the medium term were expected to fund the acquisition of 163 new trainsets, eight new locomotives, the refurbishment of 1 140 train coaches, and upgrades and improvements to 24 train stations. Other transfers were expected to subsidise 438 million passenger trips on Metrorail and 644 000 passengers on the long-distance mainline passenger services over the period ahead.

South African National Roads Agency Limited

SANRAL is responsible for the design, financing, maintenance, operation and rehabilitation of South Africa's national toll and non-toll roads.

The total proclaimed roads in the country amount to approximately 535 000 km in length, 366 872 km of non-urban roads and 168 000 km of urban roads.

Ports Regulator of South Africa

The Ports Regulator of South Africa performs functions that relate mainly to the regulation of pricing and other aspects of economic regulation, the promotion of equity of access to ports facilities and services, the monitoring of the industry's compliance with the regulatory framework, and the hearing of any complaints and appeals lodged with it.

Air Traffic and Navigation Services

The ATNS provides air traffic, navigation, training and associated services within South Africa and a large part of the Southern Indian and Atlantic Ocean, comprising approximately 10% of the world's airspace. South Africa is committed to regional aviation safety, security and environmental issues.

Cross Border Road Transport Agency

The agency's legislative mandate requires it to advise the Minister of Transport on cross border road transport policy, regulate access to the market by the road transport freight and passenger industry in respect of cross border road transport by issuing permits, undertake road transport law enforcement, and play a facilitative role in contributing to economic prosperity of the region.

Railway Safety Regulator

The Railway Safety Regulator oversees and promotes safe railway operations through appropriate support, monitoring and enforcement, guided by an enabling regulatory framework, including regulations for all rail operators in South Africa and those of neighbouring countries whose rail operations enter South Africa.

Road Accident Fund

The mandate of the RAF is to compensate South African road users for loss or damage caused by the negligent driving of motor vehicles within the borders of South Africa.

Road Traffic Infringement Agency

The RTIA promotes road traffic quality by providing for a scheme to discourage road traffic infringements to support the prosecution of offences in terms of national and provincial laws relating to road traffic, and implements a points demerit system.

Road Traffic Management Corporation

The RTMC is responsible for coordinating road-traffic management across the three spheres of government. The core mandate of the corporation is to improve traffic-law compliance and reduce road fatalities.

South African Civil Aviation Authority

The SACAA promotes, regulates and enforces civil aviation safety and security standards across the aviation industry.

South African Maritime Safety Authority

The SAMSA promotes South Africa's maritime interests, ensures the safety of life and property at sea, and prevents and combats the pollution of the marine environment by ships.

Transnet Limited

Transnet's mandate is to contribute to lowering the cost of doing business in South Africa, enable economic growth, and ensure security of supply by providing appropriate port, rail and pipeline infrastructure in a cost-effective and efficient manner.

Transnet remains the largest freight logistics company in South Africa, enabling competitiveness, growth and the development of the South African economy by delivering reliable freight transport and handling services that satisfy customer demand.

South African Airways

SAA is the leading carrier in Africa, serving 26 destinations across the continent, as well as major destinations within South Africa and internationally from its Johannesburg hub at OR Tambo International Airport and is a member of the largest international airline network, Star Alliance.

SAA's core business is the provision of passenger airline and cargo transport services together with related services, which are provided through SAA and its four wholly owned subsidiaries: SAA Technical; Mango, its low-cost carrier; Air Chefs, the catering entity of SAA; and South African Travel Centre.

South African Express Airways

SAX is a regional carrier with a mandate to provide transportation services for passengers, cargo and mail, air charters, and other related aviation services on low-density domestic routes and African regional routes.

It operates from OR Tambo International Airport (Johannesburg), King Shaka International Airport (Durban) and Cape Town International Airport, serving secondary routes in South Africa and regional routes to Botswana, Namibia, Democratic Republic of the Congo, Zimbabwe and Zambia. It also provides feeder air services that connect with the South African Airways network.

National Transport Master Plan (NAPMAP)

The NATMAP 2050 is aimed at delivering a dynamic, long-term and sustainable transportation system framework which is demand responsive and that provides a coordinated transport agenda for the whole country.

The NATMAP recognises that efficient, affordable and reliable transport systems are critical components of national economic development.

Rural Transport Strategy

Rural transport development ensures better mobility and access in rural areas.

The national transport survey found that a higher percentage of the population cannot afford the high cost of transport.

This limits their access to transport and therefore social and economic opportunities. This perpetuates underdevelopment and isolation from mainstream public transport system.

The National Land Transport Act of 2009 provides for different levels of government to be responsible for planning.

The Rural Transport Strategy is expected to contribute to the formulation of the National Planning Guidelines for rural district municipalities' public transport network plans.

Aviation

Civil aviation serves as a major catalyst for global economic activities and is vital to trade and tourism.

South Africa's major airports include:

- OR Tambo International in Gauteng
- Cape Town International in the Western Cape
- King Shaka International in KwaZulu-Natal
- Bram Fischer International in the Free State
- Port Elizabeth International in the Eastern Cape
- Upington International in the Northern Cape
- East London Airport in the Eastern Cape
- George Airport in the Western Cape
- Kimberley Airport in the Northern Cape
- Polokwane International Airport in Limpopo
- Kruger Mpumalanga International Airport in Mpumalanga.

Air Traffic and Navigation Services

The ATNS provides air traffic, navigation, training and associated services within South Africa and a large part of the Southern Indian and Atlantic Ocean, comprising approximately 10% of the world's airspace. South Africa is committed to regional aviation safety, security and environmental issues.

Public transport Scholar Transport

The National Scholar Transport Policy provides a framework for safe and secure transport for learners through the cooperation of stakeholders and law-enforcement authorities.

The DoT developed the national operational guidelines to remedy operational challenges that provinces have in implementing the Scholar Transport Programme.

The DoT continues to make a difference in the lives of many learners in rural and farmland areas through the Shova Kalula initiative, which supplies learners with non-motorised mobility in the form of bicycles.

According to Statistics South Africa's (Stats SA) General Household Survey (GHS) of 2018, More than two-thirds (67,7%) of learners walked to school while 8,0% used private vehicles. Another 5,0% travelled to school by taxi or minibus taxi.

Taxi and bus industries

The taxi industry remains the most important part of South Africa's public transport system. Taxis are the preferred type of road transport.

With more than 200 000 taxis on the road, the taxi industry generates about R40 billion per year and has created approximately 300 000 direct and indirect job opportunities, including drivers, taxi marshals and administrative support.

According to Stats SA's GHS of 2018, some 36,7% of South African households had at least one household member who used a minibus taxi/sedan taxi/bakkie taxi in 2018. Provinces with the highest levels of minibus taxi use were: Gauteng (44,1%), Eastern Cape (39,6%), and Mpumalanga (37,5%).

By comparison, 6,2% of South African households used a bus. It is notable that 15,0% of households in Mpumalanga used the bus. The use of trains was most common in the Western Cape (5,8%) and Gauteng (5,3%).

Integrated public transport networks Bus Rapid Transport (BRT)

South Africa's urban areas are hubs of economic activity, therefore, it is crucial that they maintain optimal functionality and remain engines of socio-economic growth. An integrated public transport network is central to the functioning of these hubs as they provide sustainable, affordable and functional transport solutions to urban commuters.

The rapid public transport networks which contribute to economic development, job creation and tourism include:

- *MyCiTi* operates in Cape Town, Western Cape.
- *Rea Vaya* in Johannesburg, Gauteng.
- *A Re Yeng* (Let's go) in Pretoria, Gauteng.
- *Go George* in George, Western Cape.
- *Harambee* in Ekurhuleni, Gauteng.

- *Yarona* in Rustenburg, North West.
- *GO!Durban* in Durban, KwaZulu-Natal.

Gautrain

The Gautrain is an 80-km long mass rapid transit railway system that links Johannesburg, Pretoria and OR Tambo International Airport.

It was built to relieve traffic congestion in the Johannesburg-Pretoria traffic corridor and offer commuters a viable alternative to road transport, as Johannesburg had limited public transport infrastructure.

The Gautrain transports about 52 000 people a day (including weekends) or 1,2 million people a year.

Gautrain offers two distinct train services: an Airport Service linking Sandton and Marlboro to the OR Tambo International Airport and a Commuter Service linking Rhodesfield, Marlboro, and Sandton (east-west link) and Park, Rosebank, Sandton, Midrand, Centurion, Pretoria Central and Hatfield (north-south link). All stations with the exception of the Airport station have integrated car parking facilities.

Maritime

South African's length of the coastline is estimated to be approximately 3 000 km. The Maritime Transport Policy aims to enhance certainty in the transport sector and the logistics market.

Arrive Alive campaign

The objectives of the Arrive Alive Road-Safety Campaign, especially during the Easter and December holidays, are to reduce the number of road-traffic accidents in general and fatalities in particular, and improve road-user compliance with traffic laws.

The goals of the campaign are to:

- reduce the number of road-traffic accidents in general, and fatalities in particular, by 5% compared with the same period the previous year.
- improve road-user compliance with traffic laws.
- forge improved working relationships between traffic authorities in the various spheres of government.

Decade of Action for Road Safety 2011 – 2020

South Africa is a signatory to the UN Decade of Action for Road Safety 2011 – 2020. The resolution called on member states to take the necessary steps to make their roads safer. The target of the decade is to reduce road fatalities by 50% by 2020.

The World Health Organisation was tasked with monitoring the situation by compiling a Global Status Report on progress made by the different member states towards the achievement of the decade target.

A key aspect of the Integrated Road Safety Management Programme is increasing pedestrian safety. In South Africa, there are close to 14 000 fatal road accidents a year, which cost the country over R300 billion.

The crashes occur as result of drivers not obeying or abiding to the laws in relation to driving of a motor vehicle on a public road. Although road traffic injuries have been a leading cause of mortality for many years, most traffic crashes are both predictable and preventable. Road crashes, injuries and fatalities are a public health problem development issue.

Green Transport Strategy (GTS)

The DoT is committed to making a significant impact in reducing greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions. It has developed the GTS (2018-2050), which seeks to address the adverse effects and impacts of transport on the environment and concurrently address the current and future transport demands based on the principles of sustainable development.

The GTS provides a clear and distinctive route of the environmental policy for the sector, by providing appropriate sector specific climate policy tools and corresponding mitigation and adaptations measures for the transport sector as well as a framework to implement the Transport Flagships within the National Climate Change Response Strategy.

The GTS also uses a basket of measures, which will address imperative issues such as fuel switching for the freight industry to assist with the high emission factor of this sector. The introduction and promotion of the uptake of cleaner fuels such as Liquefied Petroleum Gas and Compressed Natural Gas for freight vehicles will assist and support with the emission reductions efforts of the sector.

The use of cleaner fuels should be supported by Intelligent Transportation Systems that can provide support for this initiative of introducing cleaner transportation and alternative fuel technology for the freight sector, whilst also collecting imperative mitigation data.

The Implementation Plan of the GTS will promote the uptake of “Smart Trucks” and then benchmark against the appropriate international standards to specify the performance required from the operation of a given vehicle on a network, rather than prescribing how the specified level of performance is to be achieved.

This approach will allow more flexibility for vehicle designers to utilise innovative solutions and the latest available technology to meet the required performance standards and improve fuel efficiency.







OFFICIAL GUIDE TO
South Africa
2018/19
**Water and
Sanitation**

The Department of Water and Sanitation's (DWS) legislative mandate seeks to ensure that the country's water resources are protected, managed, used, developed, conserved and controlled in a sustainable manner for the benefit of all people and the environment.

The DWS is mandated to develop a knowledge base and implement effective policies, procedures and integrated planning strategies both for water resources and services.

This entails adhering to the requirements of water-related policies and legislation, including constitutional requirements, that are critical in delivering on the right of access to sufficient food and water, transforming the economy and eradicating poverty.

Chapter 4 of the National Development Plan (NDP) envisages a South Africa that recognises the importance of secure and equitable access to water and sanitation as catalysts for socioeconomic development. In line with this vision, over the medium term, the DWS will focus on developing and investing in water infrastructure, improving planning in and regulation of the water sector, and monitoring and protecting South Africa's water resources.

According to Statistics South Africa's (Stats SA) General Household Survey (GHS) of 2018, the number and percentage of households with access to piped water had increased since 2006, showing that 13,8 million households had access to piped water in 2018 compared to 9,3 million in 2006. an estimated 46,3% of households had access to piped water in their dwellings in 2018.

A further 28,5% accessed water on site while 12,3% relied on communal taps and 1,9% relied on neighbours' taps. Although generally households' access to water improved, 2,7% of households still had to fetch water from rivers, streams, stagnant water pools, dams, wells and springs in 2018.

A total of 97,7% of households in metros had access to tap water. This type of access to water was most common in the Nelson Mandela Bay (99,9%), City of Cape Town (99,5%), Buffalo City and City of Johannesburg (both 98,8%). Mangaung (90,1%) and City of Tshwane (93,3%) recorded the lowest access amongst metros.

About two-thirds (62,4%) of households rated the water services they received as 'good' in 2018.

Although this is slightly higher than the 60,1% recorded in 2012, it is much lower than the 73,4% approval rating reported in 2006.

The percentage of users who rated water services as average increased from 19,7% in 2006 to 26,2% in 2018. The percentage of households that rated water services as 'poor' increased from 6,9% in 2006 to 11,4% in 2018.

By mid-2019, 2.5% of water in South Africa is directed to mining, 3% to industrial use, 2% goes towards power generation and 61% is taken up by agriculture – leaving 27% for consumption for a population of over 60 million.

Over the medium term, the department plans to finalise and implement the Water and Sanitation Master Plan, which will serve as a roadmap for the integrated planning and implementation of water and sanitation projects across the water value chain.

To ensure that water resources are allocated equitably for socio-economic development, the DWS aims to finalise 80% of authorised water use licence applications within 300 days of receipt over the medium.

Sanitation

Environmental hygiene plays an essential role in the prevention of many diseases. It also impacts on the natural environment and the preservation of important natural assets, such as water resources. Proper sanitation is one of the key elements in improving environmental sanitation.

According to the GHS of 2018, nationally, the percentage of households with access to improved sanitation increased from 61,7% in 2002 to 83,0% in 2018. While the majority of households in Western Cape (93,8%) and Gauteng (91,8%) had access to adequate sanitation, access was most limited in Limpopo (58,9%) and Mpumalanga (68,1%).

In Eastern Cape, households' access to improved sanitation facilities increased by 54,6 percentage points between 2002 and 2018, growing from 33,4% to 88,0%.

Flush toilets that were connected to public sewerage systems were most common in the most urbanised provinces, namely Western Cape (89,1%) and Gauteng (88,6%). Only 26,5% of households in Limpopo had access to any type of flush toilet, the lowest of any province.

In the absence of flush toilets, 70,2% of households in Limpopo used pit latrines, most (37,6%) without ventilation

pipes. In Eastern Cape, 40,3% of households used pit toilets with ventilation pipes.

Approximately 188 000 households (1,1%) claimed that they were using bucket toilets that were supplied and cleaned by their local municipalities, an accusation that municipalities vehemently deny.

Only 0,3% or 48 000 households primarily used ecological toilets, also known as urine diversion/separation or composting toilets. Given the scarcity of water in South Africa, this type of toilet is expected to become much more common in future.

Households' access to improved sanitation was highest in Nelson Mandela Bay (97,1%), City of Johannesburg (96,4%), and Buffalo City (93,4%) and least common in eThekweni (83,9%) and Tshwane (84,0%).

Despite the improved access to sanitation facilities, many households continue to be without any proper sanitation facilities.

The percentage of households that either had no sanitation facilities or that had to use bucket toilets. Nationally, the percentage of households that continued to live without proper sanitation facilities have been declining consistently between 2002 and 2018, decreasing from 12,6% to 2,8% during this period.

The most rapid decline over this period was observed in Eastern Cape (-33,0 percentage points), Limpopo (-18,2 percentage points), Free State (-14,6% percentage points) and Northern Cape (-13,9 percentage points).

About one-fifth (23,2%) of households were concerned about poor lighting while 17,7% complained about inadequate hygiene. Although washing hands after using the toilet is vital to control infectious diseases, 16,4% of households also complained that there was no water to wash their hands after they had used the toilet. Other complaints included long waiting times (12,6%), threats to their physical safety (11,9%), and improper or inadequate enclosure of toilets (8,9%).

Personal hygiene

Although more than three-quarters (76,2%) of households indicated that their members usually wash their hands with soap and water after they had used the toilet, only two-thirds (67,5%) said that they had easy access to hand washing facilities with soap.

Gauteng is the only province in which the percentage of households that had access to hand washing facilities actually exceeded the percentage of households whose members usually washed their hands (81,2% compared to 78,2%).

Washing hands and having access to appropriate facilities were highest in Western Cape (96,3% and 83,9% respectively), and lowest in Limpopo (57,8% and 35,9%) and Mpumalanga (61,6% and 51,5%).

National Water and Sanitation Master Plan (NWSMP)

To ensure a more coordinated approach to water and sanitation management, planning, implementation, monitoring and evaluation, the DWS has developed the NWSMP.

The NWSMP points out the priority actions required until 2030 and beyond to ensure the water security and equitable access to water and sanitation services for all in South Africa.

It was developed in partnership with all relevant organs of state and water sector stakeholders, to give effect to local, national, regional, continental and international water and sanitation delivery targets and commitments.

Dams and water schemes

The country has more than 500 government-owned dams spread across all nine provinces. They range in storage capacity from a volume of 5 500 million m³ of water down to 0,2 million m³ of water.

South Africa uses about 10 200 million m³ of water a year from its major dams. The majority of water consumption can be attributed to drinking, irrigation, electricity, mining processes and industrial processes.

Bucket Eradication Programme

In keeping with the aspirations of the NDP, steady progress is being made towards eradicating the bucket toilet system in both formal and informal areas across South Africa.

Role players **Water boards**

The primary activity of water boards is to provide water services (bulk potable and bulk waste water) to other water services institutions within their respective service areas.

They may perform other activities under conditions set out in the Water Services Act of 1997. There are 15 water boards in South Africa, with the three largest being Rand Water in Gauteng, Umgeni Water in KwaZulu-Natal and Overberg Water in the Western Cape.

Catchment management agencies (CMAs)

The main responsibilities of CMAs are to manage water resources at catchment level in collaboration with local stakeholders, with specific focus on involving local communities in the decision-making processes, in terms of meeting basic human needs, promoting equitable access to water, and facilitating social and economic development.

Water-user associations (WUAs)

WUAs are cooperative associations of individual water users who wish to undertake water-related activities at local level for their mutual benefit.

Water Research Commission (WRC)

The WRC has a vital role in water research by establishing needs and priorities, stimulating and funding research, promoting the transfer of information and technology, and enhancing knowledge and capacity building in the water sector.

It also focuses on water resources management, water-linked ecosystems, water use and waste management, and water use in agriculture.

Water Trading Entity (WTE)

The DWS is responsible for the regulation of water use in South Africa by ensuring that water is allocated equitably and used beneficially in the public interest, and is also required to create a register of all water users in the country.

The National Water Act of 1998 provides for cost recovery on services rendered by the department to water users. It is against this background that the department created the WTE within its administration.

The main function of the WTE is development, operation and maintenance of specific water resources infrastructure and managing water resources in specific water management areas.

Trans-Caledon Tunnel Authority (TCTA)

The TCTA is a state-owned entity specialising in project financing, implementation and liability management.

It is responsible for the development of bulk raw-water infrastructure. It also provides an integrated treasury management and financial advisory service to the DWS, water boards, municipalities and other entities that are linked to bulk raw-water infrastructure.

Komati River Basin Water Authority

The Komati Basin Water Authority was established in terms of a treaty between South Africa and Eswatini. The aim of the authority is to manage the water resources of the Komati River basin sustainably.

The authority is responsible for financing, developing, operating and maintaining the water resources infrastructure in the basin, comprising the Driekoppies Dam in South Africa and the Maguga Dam in Eswatini.

Water Tribunal

The aim of the Water Tribunal is to hear appeals against directives and decisions made by responsible authorities, CMAs or water management agencies about matters such as the issuing of licences to use water.

It is an independent body and can hold hearings anywhere in the country.





Produced by Government Communications (GCIS)



**government
communications**

Department:
Government Communication and Information System
REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

